

Latin and Greek.

GRAMMARS AND READERS.

Junior Latin Course. By B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s. 6d.

"A good practical guide. The principles are sound, and the rules are clearly stated."—*Educational Times*.

The Tutorial Latin Grammar. By B. J. HAYES, M.A., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Accurate and full without being overloaded with detail."—*Schoolmaster*.

Latin Composition. With copious Exercises and easy continuous Passages. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. *Sixth Edition, Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.

"Simplicity of statement and arrangement, apt examples illustrating each rule, exceptions to these adroitly stated just at the proper place and time, are among some of the striking characteristics of this excellent book."—*Schoolmaster*.

Junior Latin Reader. By E. J. G. FORSE, M.A. 1s. 6d.

Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors. With Introduction (History and Antiquities), Notes, and Vocabulary. By A. F. WATT, M.A., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Provides practice in reading Latin in preparation for Examinations for which no classics are prescribed.

"It is quite an interesting selection, and well done"—*School World*.

"The selection is a good one, and the notes are brief and to the purpose."—*Journal of Education*.

Matriculation Latin Construing Book. By A. F. WATT, M.A., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s.

A guide to the construing of the Latin period and its translation into English.

"One of the most useful text-books of this very practical Tutorial Series."—*School Guardian*.

The Tutorial Latin Reader. With VOCABULARY. 2s. 6d.

"A soundly practical work."—*Guardian*.

Advanced Latin Unseens. Edited by H. J. MAIDMENT, M.A., and T. R. MILLS, M.A. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

"Contains some good passages, which have been selected from a wider field than that previously explored by similar manuals."—*Cambridge Review*.

The Tutorial Latin Dictionary. By F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A., late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. 6s. 6d.

"A sound school dictionary."—*Speaker*.

Advanced Greek Unseens. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

The Tutorial Greek Reader. With VOCABULARIES. By A. WAUGH YOUNG, M.A. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.

The University Tutorial Series

HIGHER LATIN COMPOSITION

BY

A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. OXON.

AUTHOR OF "LATIN COMPOSITION," EDITOR OF CAESAR'S GALlic WAR
• VERGIL'S AENEID, HORACE'S ODES, ETC.

AND

A. J. F. COLLINS, M.A. OXON.

EDITOR OF OVID'S HEROIDES I.-X, ETC.



LONDON: W. B. CLIVE
University Tutorial Press £2.

DRURY LANE, W.C.

1911

PREFACE.

WHEN the accidence and the ordinary rules of Latin have been mastered, and the learner for the first time attempts to translate into Latin a piece of continuous English prose, he is confronted by a new set of difficulties, which lie rather in the relation of the English constructions before him to the Latin constructions he has learned than in the management of those constructions themselves: he wants to know, not so much how, as when, to use them, and his perplexity often comes from an incomplete understanding of the exact bearing of the English.

In this book an attempt is made to meet these difficulties by an analysis of some of the differences of idiom between English and Latin sentences. Part I. deals with the more striking differences that affect the sentence as a whole, and Part II. with the Latin equivalents of some ordinary English constructions. Parts III. and IV. bring together more fully the main rules of Latin syntax, not so much with a view to their being learnt from this book, as to their application in the turning of English passages into Latin; and to this end a considerable number of illustrative examples have been incorporated.

The twenty-three exercises at the end of the book, on the subject-matter of the several chapters, are followed by a number of continuous passages, many of which have been set at the London University B.A. Examination and for Responses at Oxford.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1

PART I.

GENERAL DIFFERENCES OF ENGLISH AND LATIN STYLE. IDIOM AND CONNECTION.

CHAPTER		PAGE
I.	IDIOM—THE DIRECTNESS OF LATIN	5
II.	ON THE RENDERING OF ENGLISH ABSTRACTS IN LATIN	9
III.	PERSONIFICATION, ALLUSION, AND METAPHOR . .	12
IV.	CONNECTION: SUBORDINATION.	17
V.	ORDER	20
VI.	CONNECTION: THE USE OF CONJUNCTIONS	27

PART II.

SOME LATIN EQUIVALENTS OF ENGLISH CONSTRUCTIONS.

VII.	THE ENGLISH PARTICIPLE	36
VIII.	THE INTERCHANGE OF PARTICIPLES AND CLAUSES	40
IX.	THE ENGLISH GERUND AND VERBAL NOUN	45
X.	THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE	50
XI.	THE ENGLISH CONJUNCTION "THAT"	57
XII.	ENGLISH AND LATIN TENSES. SEQUENCE AND DEPENDENT QUESTIONS	65

PART III.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE AND ITS ELEMENTS.

CHAPTER		PAGE
XIII.	THE SIMPLE STATEMENT—THE SUBJECT	76
XIV.	THE ATTRIBUTE	83
XV.	THE PREDICATE	89
XVI.	THE OBJECT	96
XVII.	ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF THE PREDICATE	101
XVIII.	ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF THE PREDICATE. PHRASES EXPRESSING SPACE AND TIME	113
XIX.	PRONOUNS	123
XX.	COMMANDS AND QUESTIONS	134

PART IV.

SOME LATIN CONSTRUCTIONS AND THEIR
ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.

XXI.	THE ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS OF THE LATIN SUB- JUNCTIVE	142
XXII.	REPORTED SPEECH (ORATIO OBLIQUA)	155
XXIII.	COMPARISONS	162
EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN—		
	SENTENCES	167
	CONTINUOUS PASSAGES	190

HIGHER LATIN COMPOSITION.

INTRODUCTION.

THIS book is intended for use by learners who have mastered Latin ~~accidence~~ and the main rules of syntax and are now ready to begin continuous composition.

The first thing that the would-be writer of Latin prose has to do is to get rid of the illusion that on a first casual reading he knows the meaning of the English.

Just as it is often impossible to be certain of the meaning of a passage in Shakespeare, till it has been mentally paraphrased, so for the purpose of Latin prose the English must be paraphrased either implicitly or explicitly before it is translated. It must also be paraphrased from the Latin point of view; that is to say, all that is expressed in the English must be stated directly, concretely, and in a matter-of-fact way. Take for example as straightforward a sentence as the following:—

“Now it must have seemed to the eager eye of the Carthaginian patriot as though Spain had been created for the very purpose of supplying all these various and conflicting wants.”

It may be safely said that such a sentence would have been as unintelligible to a Roman as a highly metaphorical passage in Shakespeare is to a third form boy. He would ask (1) Who was the Carthaginian patriot? (2) Why, as he was not looking at Spain, did anything connected with it appear to his eye? (3) What was meant by an “eager eye”? (4) He would not be acquainted with that view of the Creation which is familiar to us, and if he were he

would still think that to suggest that Spain had been created to supply the wants of Carthage was a violent and unreal way of talking; (5) he would ask for a statement of fact, not of what "must have been." To make the meaning of the passage plain to him it would probably have to be paraphrased as follows:—"When he considered these things, it appeared to Hamilcar that Spain was exactly fitted to supply the many and varied things that were required by Carthage."

Thus the first necessity is to strip the English of its allusions, metaphors, ornaments, etc., and state the sense in a matter-of-fact way. When this has been done, the next step is to estimate the logical relations of the various parts, which relations must be made quite clear by subordination and connection in Latin, whereas in English they are frequently left to the common sense of the reader. The paraphrased English must be divided into logical units, larger as a rule than an English sentence, each of which is to form a Latin period. The simplest method for the purpose is to make a *précis* of the English. When that has been done, the statements of the *précis* will serve as principal sentences in each Latin period.

Take for example the following passage:—During the long struggle the necessities of self-defence had compelled the Welsh to settle their differences and oppose an unbroken front to their foes, and the consequence was a sort of national revival, of which Llewelyn ap Iorwerth was the leader. The reign of the next prince was unimportant; but in 1246 there succeeded another Llewelyn, who adopted the policy of his grandfather, and took advantage of the Barons' War to ally himself with Simon de Montfort and to take a prominent part in the struggles. He earned his reward when in 1269 Edward found it necessary to buy off the Welsh prince by the surrender of the "four cantreds" at the treaty of Shrewsbury.

The *précis* or abstract of this passage is "There was a Welsh revival under Llewelyn of Iorwerth. His son did little, but his grandson continued his policy, and allied himself with Simon de Montfort. Thus he secured the four cantreds from Edward." If the passage be set out

so as to emphasise the logical relation of the parts it will run us follows :—

The Welsh, as they had been compelled during this long struggle to forget their quarrels and to make a general alliance against their enemies under the leadership of Llewelyn ap Iorwerth, became strong. When he died, his son succeeded, but did not achieve much. When he also died, another Llewelyn became king, and adopting the policy of his grandfather, made an alliance with Simon de Montfort, and helped him in the Barons' Wars. As by this course he had made himself important, Edward, at the treaty of Shrewsbury, preferred to secure peace with him by surrendering the four cantreds.

The Latin of this passage will run :—

Galli, cum bello per tot annos protracto necessitate rei coacti pugnando inter se destitissent atque universi contra hostes societatem coniunxissent, rursus sub rege Levinio vigebant. Quo mortuo, filius eius, qui sex tantum annos regnavit, nihil memoria dignum effecit. Huic autem successit filius, et ille Levinius, qui, exemplo avi usus, cum inter se nobiles et rex Anglorum de imperio contendenter, societate cum Simone, nobilum duce, coniuncta haud parvam belli partem suscepit, id quod ipsi valde profuit. Edwardus enim, cum bello confecto Shrovii de conditionibus pacis ageret, ne principem armis valentem bello persequi cogeretur, agros qui Galliae erant confines Levinio concessit.

Notice (1) how in the first sentence the Latin brings out the causal connection between the union of the Welsh and the Welsh revival, (2) that the succession of the kings is clearly marked, and (3) how the causal connection of events from the succession of Llewelyn to the cession of the four cantreds is definitely stated in Latin, whereas in the English it is merely implied.

It is of course one thing to know what has to be done, and another to do it, but to know what to aim at is in Latin half the battle. The other half is to handle the Latin language, so that it may serve to express what is required. For that purpose a reasonably large vocabulary is the first necessity, and a sufficiently accurate knowledge

of Latin syntax the second. But almost as important as either is practice in manipulating the various elements of a Latin period. Of these the first, and in some ways the most difficult to use, is the perfect participle, next the circumstantial and causal *cum* clause, then relative clauses with or without the subjunctive, and finally other clauses and phrases expressing purpose and result. For it is by means of these clauses that the logical relation of events expressed in a single period is made clear.

The arrangement or order of words in a Latin period is partly a matter of skill and clear thinking, and partly a matter of ear. Practice in analysing and reconstituting periods will help to produce the necessary skill, and to learn by heart and recite aloud passages from the best authors will serve to train the ear. Beauty of rhythm is one of the chief characteristics of Latin prose, and it was probably attained by the excessive declamation which the Romans practised.

Moreover it is necessary not merely that logical relations should be brought out within the period, but also that the relation between different periods should be clear. The root of the matter in Latin as in English is clear thinking; but the adverbs, pronouns, and conjunctions employed do not always correspond in the two languages: some knowledge of the various means of connection used in Latin is essential.

Finally, there are many cases, especially in historical narrative, where the period is not used, and the sentences are short and even less connected than they would be in English.

It is customary to speak slightly of the educational value of Latin prose composition, and it is true that its value cannot be inferred from the result, if result be taken to mean the Latin produced. Learners who are not specialising in classics cannot hope to use a language which is not their own, and has been dead for fifteen hundred years, as successfully as the greatest Roman men of letters used it when it was a living tongue. There is, however, no study better calculated to train the mind in clear and concise thinking and writing.

PART I.

GENERAL DIFFERENCES OF ENGLISH AND LATIN STYLE. IDIOM AND CONNECTION.

CHAPTER I.

IDIOM—THE DIRECTNESS OF LATIN.

1. The chief differences between English and Latin Prose in point of style can be arranged under two main heads. First, Latin differs from English inasmuch as it expresses itself concretely and directly, in a matter of fact way; and secondly, Latin (of the best period) employs complex periods instead of coordinate simple sentences.

In order to write Latin Prose, therefore, it is first necessary to arrive at the precise meaning of the English, and then rewrite the passage in Latin periodic form. Chapters I.-III. will treat of the first, Chapters IV.-VI. of the second.

2. If events to be narrated are considered from a matter of fact standpoint, in most cases narrative can be resolved into a series of statements that certain persons did or suffered certain things. When a piece of English is given for translation into Latin, the first thing to do is to read it over, and where possible find a personal subject for each predication. See Chapter XIII., § 158. In the instances

there given the subject is easy to find, but in more complicated sentences difficulties may arise.

The defeat and slaughter of Catilina did not take place till March.

Ineunte modo vere proelio victus in acie eccecidit Catilina.

The consulship without a colleague raised him above all the citizens in dignity.

Qui sine collega consul omnibus civibus dignitate praestabat.

For exceptions see Chapter XIII., § 159.

3. The subject, however, must not merely be a person, it should be a proper name or personal pronoun; allusive descriptions of the subject are to be avoided. See Chapter III., § 16. These descriptive phrases belong to two classes: (1) descriptions which are simply used to avoid repeating the English subject, such as in the example on p. 1: in Latin these are simply omitted; (2) descriptions which imply an important attribute of the subject.

In this second case the subject must be split up into a name or pronoun on the one hand and an attributive phrase or clause on the other.

The return of the long lost patriot was like a triumphal procession.

Cicero ab optimo quoque civium diu desideratus, velut triumphans in urbem init.

4. The predicate can as a rule be determined when the subject is found. In the case of the impersonal construction alone can difficulties arise.

Sufficient confidence was now felt on both sides.

Eo ventum est, ut sibi uterque eorum confideret.

At the same time fighting took place at two other points.

Eodem tempore duobus praeterea locis pugnatum est.

5. The same process on a larger scale may be illustrated in the case of the following:

“Every effort was now made to fan the lukewarm feelings of this student into a glow of hatred against the monarchy. He was reminded by papers left in

his praetor's seat of his alleged descent from Brutus the tyrannicide. Stories were told that his wife urged him to action by showing that she could wound herself with a dagger unmoved."

Here the first predication is "The conspirators did all they could to inflame Brutus against the monarchy"; the second, "They left papers in the praetor's seat"; the third, "There were persons who told that his wife urged him to action," etc.

Illi nihil non temptabant, quo animum M. Bruti, viri natura inertis et philosophiae dediti, in dominatum regium incenderent. Complures enim litteris in sella praetoris positis hortabantur ne se a Lucio Bruto qui Tarquinium urbe expulisset prognatum esse oblivisceretur, neque deerant qui narrarent uxorem eius, cum dolorem vulneris quod ipsa sibi intentasset constanter ferre posse demonstrasset, exemplo maritum ad agendum incitasse.

6. The following examples may also be studied.

Servius' study was law. Long watching and toil were his, his patience was often tried by stupidity, his temper by conceit.

The trial of Oppianicus took place before the same court, when these two previous verdicts had already proved him guilty.

Soon the simultaneous sally of a larger body in close order by one of the gates had made the contest equal.

There is now a field wherein you may display your famous powers of enduring hunger.

The same acuteness of mental vision enabled him to discern the requirements of rhetoric.

Servius ius civile didicit; multum vigilavit, laboravit; multorum stultitiam perpessus est, arrogantium pertulit.

Oppianicus apud eosdem iudices reus est factus, cum his duobus praefudicis iam damnatus esset.

Mox plures simul conferti porta effusi aequaverant certamen.

Habes nunc ubi ostentes tuam illam praeclararam patientiam famis.

Ille eadem acie mentis haec quoque aspexit quae ad dicendi artem pertinebant.

Instruction should be pleasant, that lightness of touch may mitigate the natural harshness of corrections.

On such a theory a dinner-party given for electioneering purposes would secure a conviction.

This was absolutely the first case where a senator joined the popular party.

Their hope that the Senate would put up with the unbridled freedom of this magistracy was without foundation.

When she heard this, the woman was seized with such terror and trembling of every limb, that for a long time she could not open her lips.

Iucundus debet esse praeceptor, ut remedia quae alioqui sunt aspera molli manu leniantur.

Ergo ad coenam petitionis causa si quis vocat condemnatur.

Primus ille omnium ex patribus popularis est factus.

Nam quod illi sperarent, effrenatam licentiam eius magistratus Patres laturos eos fecerunt.

Hoc ubi audivit, tantus pavor tremorque omnium membrorum mulierem cepit, ut diu hiscere non posset.

CHAPTER II.

ON THE RENDERING OF ENGLISH ABSTRACTS IN LATIN.

7. Latin not merely avoids abstract subjects, but also has a far smaller supply of abstract and verbal nouns than English. It is a general maxim of Latin prose writing to use verbs where English uses nouns; *e.g.* “a battle took place,” *pugnatum est*; “Catiline’s departure followed,” *quo facto urbe excessit Catilina*.

8. The following are the more usual methods whereby Latin avoids the use of abstract expressions or verbal substantives.

(i) By the use of the substantival adjective or participle :

<i>The pinch of poverty.</i>	Angusta pauperum.
<i>Wisdom and folly are herein agreed.</i>	Hoc quidem sapientes insipientesque pariter consentiunt.

9. (ii) By the use of the predicative adjective or participle, or an appositive substantive :

<i>A conflict of opinions.</i>	Diversae sententiae.
<i>At your suggestion.</i>	Te hortante.
<i>Under the guidance of the gods.</i>	Dis bene iuvantibus.
<i>On the advice of Fabius.</i>	Auctore Fabio.
<i>The assassination of Philip.</i>	Philippus interfectus.
<i>The founding of the city.</i>	Urbs condita.
<i>He had flung himself in the path of this hostile attack.</i>	Infesto venienti se obiecerat.

10. (iii) By the substantival use of the infinitive:*Sport is life.**But to none of these four classes, according to Aristotle, belongs reason or foresight, the acquisition or the propagation of knowledge, our individual discoveries or the wealth of our memories, love and hate, desire and dread, pain and joy, or any similar qualities.**Venari est vivere.**Cogitare et providere et discere et docere et invenire aliquid et tam multa alia meminisse, amare et disse, cupere timere, angi laetari, haec et similia eorum in horum quattuor generum inesse nullo putat Aristoteles.***11. (iv) By the use of the gerund or gerundive:***An opinion as to the conduct of the war.**More had fallen in the morning's rout than in the subsequent recovery of the camp.**Wealth of speech.**Consilium de bello gerendo.**Perierunt plures in matutina fuga quam in recipiendis castris.**Dicendi copia.***12. (v) By the use of the impersonal passive verb:***There was confusion after their arrival in Rome**There was no possibility of doing harm.**A commencement was made with the discussion of the terms of peace.**The question was, under whose command or with what forces was there any chance of withstanding the tide of Carthaginian success.**Tumultuabatur postquam Romam ventum est**Non potuit noceri.**Coeptum est de pace agi.**Consultabant quoniam duce aut quibus copiis resisti victoribus Poenis posset.***13. (vi) By the use of dependent questions:***Consider the nature of God.**While our conviction of the reality of God comes to us by nature, our knowledge of His attributes is derived from reason.**Vide qualis sit deus.**Ut deos esse natura arbitramur, quales sint ratione cognoscimus.*

From them the Senate learnt that these provinces would be the cause of a great deal of fighting.

As to the nature of the soul, and its whereabouts and origin, there is much dispute.

If you fail to see its real nature, at any rate you recognise its general character; or if even that is beyond you, at least you recognise its importance.

Ab his edoctus est senatus, quantum belli eae provinciae habent.

Quid sit porro ipse animus aut ubi aut unde, magna dissensio est.

Si, quid sit hoc, non vides, at quale sit vides; si ne id quidem, at quantum sit profecto vides.

14. Many English abstract nouns such as "theory," "purpose," "circumstance," "consideration," "object," "question," "feeling," "belief," etc., are rendered in Latin by a pronoun or "res."

The space seemed to have been left for the very purpose.

These considerations induced Caesar to cross the Rhine.

Spatium ad id ipsum esse relatum videbatur.

Quibus rebus adductus Caesar Rhenum transiit.

CHAPTER III.

PERSONIFICATION, ALLUSION, AND METAPHOR.

15. The reason why proper names of persons are in most cases the subjects of active verbs in Latin is that Latin very rarely employs personification and allusion. Ultimately the use of any name which is not the name of a living being as the subject of an active verb constitutes a personification; and the use of other than proper names, or names expressing such simple relations as "brother," "king," "consul," as subjects constitutes an allusion. The difficulty for the would-be writer of Latin prose is not so much to avoid personifications and allusions in Latin, as to discover what are personifications and allusions in the English set before him.

16. Simple instances of such personifications and allusions have been given among the examples in Ch. II.; three more may be added here.

Personifications.

His personal influence had kept Burgundy true to England. Illius auctoritate in officio permanserant Burgundii.

The death of Bedford had left Beaufort at the head of the party which desired peace. Bedio mortuo Barfius illorum qui pacem cupiebant princeps est factus.

Allusions.

The young king had done his best to keep his promise of peace. Henricus (or rex) adhuc adulescens quantum in se erat pacem quam pollicitus erat praestare erat conatus.

•17. Akin to allusion is **comment**, which is very common in English historical writers, and often takes the form of an adjective used in a semi-predicative sense, which is intended to express the writer's own view. Such adjectives are never literally translated into Latin. Either an attributive phrase involving a substantive in apposition to that which the adjective qualifies is used, or the implied predication becomes explicit and is stated as a fact in a relative clause, or a verb or participle takes the place of the original substantive and the adjective becomes an adverbial phrase or clause.

The brave Cato.

M. Cato, vir fortis.

*Gloucester revived his absurd claims
on Flanders.*

Iterum Glevius regnum Galliae
Belgicae sine ullo iure sibi arro-
gabat.

The dishonourable treaty.

Indutiae quae parum ex dignitate
Anglorum esse videbantur.

18. With metaphor the case is the same as with personification and allusion: the difficulty is not to avoid metaphor in Latin, but to recognise it in English. All such words and phrases as the following are metaphors: "hope revived," "there was an *undercurrent* of Lollardry," "the general feeling for peace *gained ground* abroad," and the learner can discover a hundred others for himself in any English history book. All such metaphors are simply avoided. Thus "there was an *undercurrent* of Lollardry" would be simply *neque deearant qui clam Lollardis favebant*, and "the general feeling for peace *gained ground* abroad" simply *apud exteras etiam nationes omnes vehementius in dies pacem desiderabant*.

19. An example of the same process on a larger scale will be seen in the following extract:

*In heavy marching order, and with-
out a thought of danger, the Ro-
man army entered the valley of
death and moved along the road
that skirted the margin of the*

Romanos, cum longo agmine
maximisque impedimentis in
planitiem ingressi via quae
praeter lacum ferebat procedere
coepissent, omnino fefellerunt

lake. *A thick curtain of mist hung over the lowlands which the army was crossing, and hid from view the base of the adjoining hills, while their tops were catching the first rays of the rising sun. With grim delight, and in a fever of expectation, must the soldiers of Hannibal, as they saw above the mist the whole crest of the hills, and each glen and hollow which lay between their folds, crowded with their brothers in arms, have listened to the tramp of the 30,000 men whom they could hear but could not see, as they passed along a few hundred yards below, each step making the destruction of the whole more sure.*

insidiae. Prima enim luce claris iam oriente sole superioribus montium partibus, nebula a lacu orta campum quem ipsi transibant et vicinos colles tenebris adhuc obtegebant. Poeni, cum iugum totum, et si qua intercedebant vallis aut cavum, a suis obsecsum viderent copiasque hostium, quas sub pedibus praeterire audirent neque certare possent, quo longius progrederentur eo magis intercludi et cladi omnes obici sentirent, acres et certaminis avidi signum expectabant.

Here, in the first sentence "valley of death," a frigid reminiscence of Tennyson, is avoided. In the second "curtain," a metaphor which has almost ceased to be metaphorical, is dropped, as is "fever" lower down, and also "folds." The third sentence is peculiarly unlike Latin. A Roman historian always tells his reader what happened, even when his account of events is evolved out of his own imagination; therefore "must have listened," which shows that the scene is imagined by the author and constitutes a comment, must be rendered by a verb in the indicative. "The thirty thousand men" is simply an allusive periphrasis for "the Romans," while to speak of "a step" doing anything would be in Latin a violent personification, and quite impossible.

20. Sometimes an important metaphor should be rendered by the corresponding metaphor in Latin if there is one, or if not by another metaphor; but the range of metaphorical expression in Latin is confined within narrow

limits, and metaphors are rare except as definite ornaments in oratory.

*His death left room for Richard
Duke of York's appearance on
the stage of polities.*

Quo mortuo primas iam in civi-
tate partes agere potuit Ricar-
dus.

21. To avoid personifications, allusions, and metaphors does not mean to shirk difficulties or to aim at baldness of expression in Latin. All that the English expresses must be translated and the points brought out, but really careful sifting and testing of a passage will show to an average intelligence, if conscientiously employed, what is important and what is not. The sense of the English and the Latin must be the same, but the words and forms of expression by which in most cases that sense is conveyed must be different; therefore reproduce the sense, but not the words.

22. A few words may be added on the management of proper names in Latin Composition.

(1) A Roman is usually referred to by his *nomen* and abbreviated *praenomen*, e.g. Cn. Pompeius, M. Tullius, T. Labienus. When the name occurs frequently, the *praenomen* may be omitted. (2) Caesar always speaks of himself by his *cognomen* and well-known persons are often referred to in the same way, e.g. Cicero, Flaccus (Horace), Maro (Vergil), Paullus. Such combinations as Quintus Cicero or Julius Caesar do not occur in classical Latin. English usage is irregular, for we speak of Horace, Vergil, Livy, Pompey, Terence—*nomina*, and Cicero, Cato, Catiline, Plautus, Martial—*cognomina*. Notice that “Rome” is frequently *populus Romanus*, and “the Romans” *nostri*.

Greek names are as a rule transliterated, e.g. Pericles, Aristides, and declined in a form partly Latin partly Greek.

23. The learner's chief difficulty will be concerned with English names. The following methods for dealing with the names which occur in English and modern history are perhaps the best.

If an ancient parallel can be found, alter all the names on one plan; *e.g.* the career of Cromwell is in some respects parallel to the career of Marius or Caesar or Vespasian, there are analogies between Pitt and Pericles, English and other kings may correspond to Roman Emperors, James I. to Claudius, Charles I. to Galba, Charles II. to Nero, Henry VIII. to Tiberius, Louis XIV. to Augustus. The same principle applies to the rendering of the names of modern institutions. "Parliament" is as a rule best translated by *senatus*, unless there is emphasis on its popular character, when *populus* should be used. *Comitia* never means anything but "elections."

The advantage of this plan is in many cases two-fold: (a) by creating the proper atmosphere it often supplies vocabulary; if such a phrase as "republicans without fear, without remorse, without hope" is associated with Cato, some of the phrases used of him by Cicero will probably occur to the mind, (b) it enables the writer to display any knowledge of antiquities he happens to possess.

For an example of this method see § 29.

24. If such a translation of the situation is not possible, names should be transliterated in such a way as to be declinable. English personal names have a Latin equivalent in use, *e.g.* Henry, *Henricus*; Edward, *Eduardus*; Walter, *Gualterus*; William, *Gulielmus*. In the Middle Ages writers frequently Latinised their names, *e.g.* della Scala, *Scaliger*; Komensky, *Comenius*, and so on, and the same method of formation may be followed in composition, *e.g.* Bradshaw, *Buratsavius*; Wolsey, *Lanamarius*, etc. Avoid English titles: Lord Salisbury would be simply *Q. Caecilius*, the Earl of Worcester *Vigornensis*, etc. Do not replace an English name by the name of an important Roman unless there is some parallel between the two persons; *e.g.* it would be allowable to call Burke Cicero, but unsuitable to give him the name of Burrus.

CHAPTER IV.

CONNECTION : SUBORDINATION.

25. Having arrived at the meaning of the English, the next thing for the learner to do is to express that meaning in Latin form. Narrative in its lowest terms consists of a series of independent predication in the grammatical form of simple sentences. In practice, however, all languages subordinate the less important predication to the more important, but inflected languages in which the grammatical construction of a word is indicated not by its position, but by its form, can, and as a rule do, employ a more complex style of narrative than uninflected languages.

26. In the initial stages of composition Latin or English sentences may be reduced to their lowest terms, and then built up again into periods; but in writing, after the matter of fact meaning of the English has been discovered, it is not as a rule necessary to go through the process of breaking up the English into co-ordinate predication, but it may be assumed that what is subordinate in English is also subordinate in Latin.

There are, however, many compound sentences in English such that one verb should be subordinated in Latin, and many independent predication of which the verbs will require to be subordinated to more important verbs. Latin prefers complex sentences to compound, and compound sentences to independent predication with different subjects.

27. Subordination in Latin is effected as a rule by means of the perfect participle and circumstantial clauses, particularly *cum* clauses.

The perfect participle is the commoner because the shorter construction, *cum* clauses being used where the verb is intransitive in Latin, but not deponent (see § 72), to translate the English perfect participle active. *Time* clauses with *ut* and *ubi* are not uncommon.

28. The question for the beginner is at what point subordination is to stop, and the only answer that can be given is that the amount of subordination is determined only by the sense and the necessity for clearness.

Beginners as a rule attempt more subordination than they can manage. Sentences in Caesar and Livy are not as a rule long, and very complex periods are exceptional. The length of the period in the first place depends on the sense. Where a large number of closely connected events or ideas have to be expressed, a long period may be used. Thus Caesar describes his start for Britain and a great part of the voyage in one sentence, but a beginner would probably do better to subordinate not more than three events at a time.

29. To determine the amount of subordination required, it may be well to make a *précis* of the English. By this means it will be possible to arrive at the important predication which in Latin are to be principal sentences. The predication which do not appear in the *précis* may be treated as subordinate. *E.g.*,

“By request of Fleetwood, the Rump had resumed its sittings, and Monk, declaring himself the humble servant of the members, announced his readiness to do their bidding. Encouraged by his attitude, Hazelrig and other members of the Commonwealth men endeavoured to embroil him with the City, where the chief strength of the Presbyterians lay, by ordering him to pull down the gates of London in punishment for a declaration of the Common Council that, as London had no representatives in the Rump, no more taxes should be paid till the vacancies had been filled up. Monk obeyed; but the folly of the action convinced him that the cause of the Rump was hopeless,

and immediately afterwards he joined the citizens in a demand for a free parliament."

The above passage here contains three statements: (1) Hazelrig and his friends ordered Monk to pull down the gates of London, (2) Monk did so, (3) he then demanded a free Parliament.

The rest is subordinate, for Hazelrig gave the order with the purpose of embroiling Monk with the people of London, and he did so because he felt encouraged, and he was encouraged because, when the Rump met, Monk seemed to be amenable. Moreover the order was given ostensibly to punish the people because a declaration had been made, and so on.

The second statement stands alone.

In the third sentence, as in the first, the main statement is found in a verbal substantive. The sense is, "Monk, as he was convinced that the cause of the Rump was hopeless, having gone over to the people, asked for a free parliament," *i.e.* that the elections should be free and not controlled by the army.

The following is a rendering of the passage which should not be beyond the powers of a moderately advanced learner.

"Senatu iterum a Q. Pedio convocato, cum Octavius se dignitati illius ordinis servire professus omnia ex auctoritate patrum se facturum esse confirmasset, maiore iam animo Cicero et optimates, ut populum, qui plerumque Caesaris partibus faveret, offenderet Octavius, eum portas urbis demoliri iusserunt, quod promulgata esset haec rogatio: cum iam in senatu nemo esset Romanus, ne quis vectigal penderet, dum novi allegarentur senatores. Neque recusavit Octavius. Brevi autem cum senatus, qui hoc tam stulte commisisset, causam iacere satis appareret, consilio cum populo communicato, ut libera essent comitia et ipse postulavit."

The first period might be broken after the fourth line and run, "Senatu iterum a Q. Pedio convocato Octavius se . . . confirmavit. Quo facto elati Cicero, etc."

CHAPTER V.

ORDER.

30. Besides logical considerations and the general sense of the passage, the length of a Latin period is determined by the necessity for clearness. Particular points in grammar may make it impossible to group in one period series of events which are connected together closely enough to form one sentence logically. It may not be possible to secure a single subject for the chief predictions, or it may be necessary to use several intransitive verbs which have no perfect participle. But when these preliminary difficulties are got over, the clearness of the passage will depend on the order and arrangement of the words. Thus Horace in a famous passage speaks of "*lucidus ordo*," *i.e.* "enlightening order."

31. The following are the rules which govern the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence where the order (as is very commonly the case) is not affected by considerations of euphony or emphasis.

32. (a) The subject stands first.

NOTE 1.—This does not apply to the infinitive used as subject.

NOTE 2.—Interrogative and relative words, conjunctions and other words of connection or transition, are placed at the beginning of the sentence or clause which they introduce, except enclitics (*-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*), *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quoque*, and (usually) *igitur*, *tamen*.

(b) A finite verb (*i.e.* the primary predicate) stands at the end of its sentence or clause, the secondary predicate (if there is one) preceding the primary.

(c) The object is placed between the subject and the predicate, an indirect object usually preceding a direct object.

(d) An attribute, whether consisting of an ordinary adjective, an attributive genitive, a substantive in apposition, or a phrase, usually follows the substantive to which it refers, but a demonstrative or an adjective of quantity or number precedes its substantive.

(e) An adverb or adverbial phrase immediately precedes the word it modifies.

(f) A preposition precedes its case, except *tenus* and enclitic *cum*. An attribute may intervene.

The Senate ordered a commission of two to be appointed for building that temple in accordance with the dignity of the Roman people.

Senatus duumviros ad eam aedem pro amplitudine populi Romani faciendam creari iussit.

OBS.—In the above example *ad . . . faciendam* is an attributive phrase qualifying *duumviro*s; *eam* (a demonstrative) is attribute to *aedem*; *Romani* is the attribute of *populi*; *populi Romani* is attributive genitive qualifying *amplitudine*; *pro . . . Romani* together forms an adverbial phrase modifying the verbal notion in *faciendam*.

33. A word is frequently, for the sake of emphasis, put in some prominent position—*i.e.* either first or last in the sentence. The subject is, if emphatic, placed at the end; the verb, if emphatic, at the beginning. Either of these positions emphasises any other word.

He was feared by his slaves, revered by his children. Metuebant servi, verebantur liberi.

It was through me that you recovered Tarentum. Mea opera Tarentum recepisti.

OBS.—Here the normal order would be *Tarentum opera mea receperisti*, a possessive adjective usually following its substantive.

34. Dependent clauses other than consecutive are frequently, but by no means always, inserted in the principal sentence. Whether they are so or not will depend upon considerations of clearness and emphasis. Confusion arises when a sediment of verbs forms at the end of a period.

Caesar exhorted his men to break down the bridge which he had made over the Rhine. *Caesar suos hortatus est ut pontem quem in Rheno fecisset scinderent.*

Here to have included the dependent command in the principal sentence would have led to considerable awkwardness.

35. On the other hand, avoid weak endings or tails.

The Treveri refused to attend the assizes because they had formed an alliance with the Germans who had lately crossed the Rhine. *Treveri, quod cum Germanis qui nuper Rhenum transierant societatem coniunxerant, ad conventus venire nolebant.*

Not to have included the relative clause which is doubly dependent in the principal clause would have been to leave the sentence with an insufferably weak ending.

36. Emphasis is usually obtained by placing the word to be emphasised at the beginning or end of the sentence (see § 32), but any departure from the normal order will give emphasis.

I beg you in the name of heaven . . . *Per te deos oro . . . (the invariable order in this phrase).*

Do you see how great is the disagreement? *Videsne quam sit magna dissensio?*

In the same way a word for the sake of emphasis may be placed outside its clause.

Had I believed such a story, I should not have come. *Tali si credidisse fabulae, non venissem.*

There is no one who could better advise you. *Nemo est tibi qui sapientius suadere possit.*

37. Contrasted words may be brought together for the sake of emphasis.

The tyrant is gone, but I see that the tyranny survives. *Sublato tyranno tyrannida manere video.*

A common order under this head is **chiasmus**, where, if the order of the parts of the first of two contrasted phrases is a_1b_1 , the order of the parts of the second is b_2a_2 ; *e.g.*,

Compare present evils with past pleasures. *Praesentia mala voluptatibus praeteritis confer, or
Mala praesentia praeteritis voluptatibus confer.*

38. A further extension of the effect of contrast is the balance between contrasted clauses. When the one clause is subordinate to the other, an adverb or pronoun is inserted in the principal clause which balances the subordinating conjunction or pronoun in the dependent clause; such pairs are—

is.....qui and id.....quod and eo.....quo.

eo.....ut (final).

adeo, sic, ita.....ut (consecutive).

ita.....ut (comparative).

prius {quam.

ante {quam.

perinde.....ac si.

We take up pleading before we acquire knowledge. *Ante ad agendum quam ad cognoscendum venimus.*

The man who is eloquent has all the virtues. *Qui eloquens est, is virtutes omnes habet.*

He contrived to effect his retreat without losing a man. Ita copias reduxit, ut neminem suorum desideraret.

If art is defined as Antonius explained. Si ars ita definitur, ut Antonius exposuit.

39. *Cum* (with indicative) *tum* are also used to contrast clauses, in which case the subordinate clause introduced by *cum* always stands first.

For my own part, while I always held you to be a god in oratory, I thought you deserved quite as much credit for your good nature as for your eloquence.

Equidem te, cum in dicendo semper putavi deum, tum vero tibi numquam eloquentiae maiorem tribui laudem quam humanitatis. •

40. *Cum*.....*tum* and *ita* . . . *ut* are also used to contrast words and phrases.

We are anxious to win, and to win too under your leadership.

Cum vincere cupimus, tum te duce vincere.

Eumenes was prompted alike by long-standing hatred and by a more recent cause of wrath; for thanks to the king's treachery he had been all but slain at Delphi like a beast that is sacrificed.

Eumenem cum vetus odium tum recens stimulabat ira, quod scelere regis prope ut victima Delphis mactatus esset.

He was not at once an unrighteous king in time of peace and an incapable captain in war.

Nec ut iniustus in pace rex, ita dux belli pravus fuit.

And simply as a substitute for *et*.....*et*, *et*.....*-que*, etc.

Both in war and in everything else luck is a mighty factor.

Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna.

The Macedonians essayed the deed with as much courage as folly, and with as much cowardice as folly they relinquished the attempt.

Aggressi facinus Macedones ut inconsulte ita audacter, coeptum nec consulte et timide reliquerunt.

• **41.** Euphony also affects the order of words in the period. Words which have the same termination, more especially if they have the same number of syllables, are as a rule separated.

He asked me if this would be agreeable to me.

Rogavit num hoc mihi gratum esset futurum.

All the cavalry who were on the spot.

Omnes qui aderant equites.

42. Similarly a period does not as a rule end with a weak rhythm. A word of three syllables is preferable to one of two. In oratory the commonest rhythms are (1) a four-syllabled word with the first and third syllables long (double trochee), e.g. *consequentur, appetivit, saevendum*; (2) a combination of six syllables (usually in two words), of which the first and fifth are accented, e.g. *esse moriendum* and Cicero's favourite *esse videatur*; (3) a combination of five syllables all long but the second, e.g. *audiebatur, esse laudandum*.

43. The following version will serve to illustrate a few of the points mentioned above.

“With every power that we have we can do two things: we can work and we can play. Every power that we have is at the same time useful to us and delightful to us. Even when we are applying these powers to the furtherance of our personal objects, the activity of them gives us pleasure; and when we have no useful end to which to apply them, it is still pleasant to us to use them; the activity of them gives us pleasure for its own sake. There is no motion of our body or mind which we use in work, which we do not also use in play or amusement. If we walk in order to arrive at the place where our interest requires us to be, we also walk about the fields for enjoyment.”

“Quaecumque nobis insunt facultates, eas licet et ad ludum et ad laborem adhibere, quippe quae omnes et utiles nobis sint et iucundae. Nam sive quid commodi nobis in

agendo expetitur, habet iucunditatem quandam ipsa illa exercitatio • sive omnino non est. tamen id ipsum aliquid agere delectat. Tum motibus illis omnibus vel animi vel corporis, per quos quid in laborando efficimus, iisdem necesse est in ludis oblectamentisque utamur (or Tum nullus est motus neque animi neque corporis, per quem quid in laborando efficimus, quo non in ludis etiam oblectamentisque utamur) : quippe ambulamus ut eo quo commodi causa velimus perveniamus, est non nulla etiam per rura vagantibus oblectatio."

Notice (1) how the relative is balanced by the demonstrative; (2) how substantives and adjectives are placed at the end for emphasis, *e.g.* in the sentence *habet iucunditatem .. exercitatio*; (3) how *illis* is inserted between *motibus* and *omnibus* to avoid a bad rhythm; (4) that no sentence ends with a word of less than three syllables.

CHAPTER VI.

CONNECTION: THE USE OF CONJUNCTIONS.

44. Three classes of words are used to connect sentences in Latin: (i) demonstrative pronouns and adverbs, (ii) relative pronouns, (iii) conjunctions. The following are some connections selected from a page of ordinary narrative: *His de causis, Itaque, Rationem hanc, Haec, Quibus disclusis, Interim, Quod ubi comperit, His constitutis rebus, etc.*

45. The chief demonstrative pronouns used for connection are **hic**, **is**, **ille**, and **idem**.

Demonstrative pronouns and adjectives when used for connection are, as a rule, placed first, as in the phrases above. An emphatic pronoun used with a definite reference may even be placed outside a dependent clause.

When he had fixed them (sc. the piles) in the river, *Haec cum in flumen defixerat.*

But if the reference is general, the conjunction introducing the dependent clause comes first.

While this (sc. certain events) was going on, *Dum haec geruntur.*

Demonstrative adverbs which express definite kinds of relations (e.g. time, cause, etc.) between clauses are treated below (§§ 48-53).

46. Closely akin to connection by means of demonstrative pronouns is **relative connection**.

The connecting relative is never found in English, whereas connection by means of the demonstrative is found. The beginner has therefore first to learn that a connecting relative may be used to translate an English demonstrative,

and, having done so, to remember that it is not invariably so used. "When he had finished these operations" may be *Quibus rebus conjectis* or *His rebus conjectis*. If there is any distinction in sense, it is that the relative connection is slightly closer and throws less emphasis on the word which the pronoun represents.

The connecting relative always stands first.

When Caesar learnt this.

Quae ubi comperit Caesar

If, on the other hand, "Caesar" was to be the subject of the whole period and the connection not too close, it might be necessary to translate "this" by a demonstrative, e.g. *Caesar, cum haec cognovisset*, etc.

47. Sentences may be connected in such a way as to imply that there were certain relations between the events they narrate, e.g. relations of time, place, cause, etc. These relations correspond to the relations which circumstantial and result clauses bear to the predications they modify. They are expressed by **demonstrative adverbs** or **conjunctions**.

48. (a) Time connection. The commonest adverbs in use are *tum*, *inde*, *deinde*, "then"; *interim* and *interea*, "in the meanwhile"; *postea*, "afterwards"; *hic*, "at this point"; *denique*, "finally."

Notice that *inde* and *deinde*, which are commonly equivalent to *tum* meaning "then," i.e. "next," are not equivalent to *tum* meaning "then," i.e. "at that time"; thus *deinde* and *tum* can be used together, "then in the next place."

First they teach that there are gods, then what is their nature, then that the world is governed by them, finally that they take an interest in the doings of men.

Primum docent esse deos, deinde quales sint, tum mundum ab iis administrari, postremo consuere eos rebus humanis.

Compare—

First we ought to think over what we intend to do, and then after that speak and act.

Primum cogitare debemus ea quae acturi sumus, deinde tum dicere ac facere.

Time connection may also be effected by phrases and clauses expressing time. The following are common, and it is to be noticed often represent English adverbs: "meanwhile," *dum ea geruntur*; "thereupon," *quo* (or *hoc, facto*). The references of English connecting words are often general, and may require to be made explicit in Latin.

49. (b) Place connection is expressed by the demonstrative adverbs: *huc*, "hither"; *hic*, "here"; *hinc*, "hence"; *eo*, "thither"; *ibi*, "there," etc. The relative *quo*, "whither," i.e. "and thither," is common.

Various local phrases and clauses may be used as above.

There was a wide plain and in it an earth mound of considerable height. The spot was about equally distant from Caesar's camp and that of Ariovistus. To it, as had been arranged, they came for a conference.

Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt.

50. The same cautions as to clearness of reference apply. Thus in certain cases, if the English "there" meant "when he had come there," it might have to be represented by *quo cum venisset*.

51. (c) Causal connection, i.e. connection which implies that the second sentence expresses the cause or explanation of what is stated in the first, is effected by the conjunctions *nam* and *enim*, "for."

It is to be noticed that in many cases where the second clause gives an explanation of the first, "for" is not used in English where *enim* or *nam* is used in Latin.

But the natives were equal to the occasion. Their leaders gave the order, etc. At consilium barbaris non defuit. Nam duces, etc.

52. (d) Result connection. If it is implied that the second sentence expresses the result of what is stated in the first, the following connecting words are used: *itaque*, "and so"; *ergo*, "therefore"; *igitur*, "therefore"; also *itu* and *sic*, but less commonly. The following should also be noticed: *quamobrem*, *quare*, *quae cum ita sint (essent)*; all three may stand for "therefore" or "thus"; the last is often a useful rendering of "under the circumstances."

Under the circumstances, Catiline, do you hesitate to depart? *Quae cum ita sint, Catilina, dubitas abire?*

53. (e) **Concessive connection.** Sentences may be said to be connected concessively when what is granted is stated in the first, and what is "nevertheless" affirmed is expressed in the second. The connection is usually *tamen* or *sed tamen*, representing the English "yet," "nevertheless," and *ut qui* ("and yet"); also *quamquam* ("but" or "and yet"), and less commonly *etsi*, in the same sense, are used.

*The fighting was keen on both sides,
but our men got into great confu-
sion.*

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter.
Nostri tamen magnopere per-
turbantur.

54. The following uses of coordinating conjunctions may be noted:

55. Of the conjunctions meaning "and" the most usual is *et*, which is used to connect words, clauses, and sentences; *-que* usually connects words, and is often used in the case of two objects commonly associated.

The Senate and people of Rome. Senatus populusque Romanus.

Atque or *ac* properly means "and indeed," "and especially," though often used by way of variety for *et*. (*Atque* is used before a vowel or a consonant, *ac* before consonants only.)

Thanks must be rendered to the immortal gods, and especially to Jupiter the Stayer himself. Dis immortalibus habenda est gratia, atque atque ipsi Iovi Statori.

Within the walls, and indeed in the very heart of the city, there are foes. *Intra moenia atque in sinu urbis sunt hostes*

OBS.—When *et* and *atque* are used to connect periods, they are equivalents and both mean "and indeed," "and moreover," "besides"; *et* may be strengthened by *quoque*, in which case an emphasised word comes between the two, *atque* by *etiam* immediately following it.

56. In lists and enumerations *et* (if used at all) is usually inserted before each item after the first, instead of before the last only.

Old men are peevish, uneasy, wrathful, and hard to please. *Sunt morosi et anxi et iracundi et difficiles senes.*

OBS.—Often, however, the items are enumerated without any conjunction being used; this usage is known as "asyndeton."

57. Two attributes of a substantive must be connected by a conjunction.

I have had many great contests with Marcus Crassus. *Mihi cum M. Crasso multae et maguae contentiones fuerunt.*

58. Of the commoner conjunctions usually rendered "but," *sed* limits or corrects a preceding statement, introducing something in contrast to it, whereas *autem* merely denotes transition to a fresh thought; *at* is strongly adversative, and often means "but," "it may be objected."

It is difficult to do, but I will nevertheless try. *Difficile factu est, sed conabor tamen.*

Life devoid of friends cannot be pleasant; but enough of this lit. these things so far, now the bounds (so to speak) of affection have to be determined. *Vita deserta ab amicis non potest esse iucunda; sed haec hactenus; constituendi autem sunt quasi termini diligendi.*

“The people decided amiss”; but it did decide: “it ought not to have done so”; but it had the power.

Male iudicavit populus; at iudicavit: non debuit; at potuit.

•

59. Of the conjunctions meaning “or,” *aut* contrasts things essentially opposed; *vel* and the enclitic *-ve* leave the choice open as to some detail.

So great is the force of goodness that we esteem it either in those whom we have never seen or in an enemy.

Tanta vis probitatis est, ut eam vel in eis quos numquam vidi- mus vel in hoste diligamus.

Two or three friends of the king are very rich.

Amici regis duo tresve perdivites sunt. •

60. A second final clause is, if negative, introduced by *neve* or *neu*.

Caesar encouraged his troops to preserve the remembrance of their former valour and not to be troubled in mind.

Caesar milites cohortatus est uti suaे pristinae virtutis memoriā retinerent neu perturbarentur animo.

61. Alternative conditional clauses are introduced by *sive . . . sive* or *seu . . . seu*. These conjunctions are also used when the alternatives are expressed by single words or phrases instead of complete clauses.

I am in the habit of frequenting that spot with great pleasure, either if I am pondering anything in my mind or if I am writing or reading anything.

Illo loco libentissime soleo uti, sive quid mecum ipse cogito sive quid scribo aut lego.

All lack liberty if they are slaves either to a king or to an aristocracy.

Omnes libertate carent sive regi sive optimatibus servient.

OBS.—The use of *sive . . . sive* must be clearly distinguished from that of *utrum . . . an*. The latter introduce the two alternatives of a double question, direct or dependent.

What does it matter whether we are slaves to a king or to an aristocracy? Quid refert utrum regi an optimatibus serviamus?

62. Two sentences may be connected by beginning the second with a word taken from the first.

The cavalry offered the stoutest resistance, and of them the King himself was far the bravest. Eques maxime resistebat, equitumque longe fortissimus ipse rex.

Be not covetous; for there is no more unbecoming fault. Noli avarus esse; avaritia enim quid potest esse foedius?

63. Similarly a word which is contrasted with some word in the preceding sentence may be placed first. This device produces adversative connection and emphasis at the same time, and is thoroughly idiomatic.

A man who had no official rank killed Tiberius Gracchus....and shall I, a consul, suffer Catilinus? Tiberium Gracchum....privatus interfecit: Catilinam nos consules preferemus?

Similarly Caesar, after he has discussed the private and social customs of the Suevi, begins the next sentence with the word *Publice*, "As a state," thus contrasting the social and political institutions.

64. The following connections are used by Cicero:—

Quid? ("again") and *age*, in the same sense, combined with *dum*, *nunc*, *vero*, *porro*, are used at the opening of a fresh division in a speech.

Iam is used for transition, continuation, and summary; *e.g.* in the Speech on the Manilian Law, after discussing Pompeius' self-control, Cicero proceeds to discuss his affability: *Iam vero ita faciles aditus ad eum privatorum*, "Then so easy is he of access to unofficial persons." The orator's next point is Pompeius' eloquence, and he proceeds: *Iam quantum consilio, quantum dicendi gravitate valeat.....saepe cognovistis*, "Once more you have often had reason to know with what wisdom and dignity he can speak."

The orator then closes the enunciation of virtues: *Hu-manitate tam tanta est*, “Finally he is so gentle.”

Velut and *ut* are used to introduce instances, or similes. Other favourite connections in Cicero are, *etenim* (Greek *kai yap*), “for indeed,” introducing a corroborative statement; *vero*, “but,” appended to a single word which is to be emphasised (e.g. *Nunc vero quae tua est vita*, “But as it stands, what sort of a life do you lead?”); *tandem* and *tandem aliquando*, time connections meaning “now at last,” which in practice have come to be exclamations; *proinde*, “therefore” or “then,” in expressions of advice, (e.g. *Proinde exeat*, “Let them depart”).

65. The following two imprecations are used for emphasis and transition, *mehercle*, or *mehercule*, and *medius fidius*, “in heaven’s name.”

66. Frequently words are coordinated in Latin without the use of conjunctions. The technical name for such coordination is *asyndeton*.

*He went away, he withdrew, he Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit.
passed out, he burst forth.*

67. Similarly the place of the Latin period may be taken by a string of coordinate clauses without connecting words. In oratory this detached style is used in argument and refutation, and in passages expressing strong emotions. In narrative it is used frequently in combination with *asyndeton*, (a) when the description is vivid and rapid, (b) when many details have to be given, (c) in summaries and conclusions.

(a) *No sooner had they entered a narrower section of the road dominated on one side by an over-hanging height, than the enemy sprang out of their ambuscades in every direction both in front and rear, fought at close quar-*

Ubi in angustiorem viam et parte altera iugo insuper imminentis ventum est, undique ex insidiis barbari a fronte a tergo coorti cominus eminus petunt, saxa ingentia devolvunt. Maxima ab tergo vis hominum urgebat.

ters, attacked them with missiles, and rolled down great stones upon the column. It was in their rear that the number of their assailants was greatest. The infantry turned, formed line, and faced the enemy; but it was proved beyond a doubt that, if they had not had a strong rearguard, they woul' have sustained a terrible disaster in the pass.

(b) *Hasdrubal commanded the left wing, Maharbal the right. Hannibal in person with his brother Mago was in the centre. The sun—whether the troops were so placed on purpose, or whether it was by chance—fell very conveniently sideways on both armies, as the Romans faced south and the Carthaginians north. The wind which the natives of the district call *Vulturnus* was against the Romans and rolled clouds of dust in their faces till they could see nothing.*

(c) *Such was the famous battle of Trasimene, one of the most memorable disasters which ever befell the Roman state. Fifteen thousand Romans fell in the battle, ten thousand flying in all directions through Etruria made for the city by various routes. The enemy's losses in the actual fighting were one thousand five hundred, but many more on both sides died of their wounds subsequently.*

In eos versa peditum acies haud dubium fecit quin, nisi firmata extrema agminis fuissent, ingens in eo saltu accipienda clades fuerit.

duces cornibus praerant sinistro Hasdrubal, dextro Maharbal; medianam aciem Hannibal ipse cum fratre Magone tenuit. Sol seu de industria ita locatis, seu quod forte ita stetere, peropportunè utriusque parti obliquus erat, Romanis in meridiem Poenis in septentrionem versis; ventus (Vulturnum regionis incolae vocant) aduersus Romanis coortus multo pulvere in ipsa ora volvendo prospectum ademit.

Haec est nobilis ad Trasumenum pugna atque inter paucas memorata populi Romani clades. Quindecim milia Romanorum in acie caesa; decem milia sparsa fuga per omnem Etruriam diversis itineribus urbem petiere; mille quingenti hostium in acie, multi postea utrimque ex vulneribus periere.

PART II.

SOME LATIN EQUIVALENTS OF ENGLISH CONSTRUCTIONS.

CHAPTER VII.

THE ENGLISH PARTICIPLE.

68. A participle, unless it is used as an attribute, implies a predication, of which the noun in agreement with the participle is the subject. Thus a sentence containing a participle, though still simple in form, is double in sense, and stands midway between a purely simple sentence and a compound or complex sentence.

69. Strictly speaking English has only two participles, the present and the past, e.g. *loving* and *loved*; but in the development of the language a past participle active and a present participle passive have come into use, e.g. *having loved* and *being loved*, also an extra form of the past participle passive has been formed, *having been loved*. It is found, but is rare outside grammars. The present participle passive in most cases takes its place, and in certain phrases the older participle is still used, occasionally strengthened by “when.”

70. A participle in English is used either as a nominative in agreement with the subject, or as a nominative absolute, *i.e.* in such a case as “the day being fine, I took a walk”: in this case the participial phrase *the day being*

fine modifies the predicate. These two uses have their equivalents in Latin, which also uses the participle in agreement with the subject and the ablative absolute as an equivalent to the English nominative absolute.

71. As events to be related generally succeed each other in time, the most useful participle is the perfect participle, and the chief differences between English and Latin are (A) that English has a perfect participle active and Latin has not, but is compelled to use passive perfect participles and circumstantial clauses; (B) that English uses the present participle in a past sense, whereas Latin never uses the present participle unless the action it expresses is strictly contemporaneous with that of the main verb.

72. (A) 1. Where the verb is transitive, the English perfect participle active (and the present participle used in a past sense) is translated by the Latin perfect participle passive in the ablative absolute.

Having crossed the river he hurried towards the town. Flumine trahisse ad urbem contendit.

2. When a pronoun which is the object direct or indirect of the main verb refers to the noun which is the object of the participle, that pronoun is usually, though not always, omitted in Latin, and the participial phrase is constructed as the object direct or indirect of the main verb.

Having snatched up a standard, he threw it over the rampart. Arreptum vexillum trans vallum traiecit.

3. Where the verb is intransitive, the English past participle active must be represented by a circumstantial clause introduced by *cum* with the verb in the pluperfect subjunctive.

Having arrived at the spot, he requisitioned the tribes for troops. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat.

Such a circumstantial clause is at all times an equivalent for the perfect participle and can be used even where the verb is transitive, although the passive participle is the commoner construction.

Sighting the enemy at daybreak, he marshalled his men for battle. Cum prima luce hostes conspexisset, aciem instruxit.

4. In deponent and semi-deponent verbs the perfect participle which has an active sense can be used in agreement with the subject.

Dying, he left his kingdom to his son. Mortuus filio regnum tradidit.

73. (B) 1. The English present participle, both active and passive, is most commonly used of actions already completed at the time of the action of the main verb, and is therefore usually to be translated as though it were a past participle; see above (A).

2. Only when the participle and the main verb express two contemporaneous actions, and no other relation between the two but that of temporality is implied, can the English present participle be translated by the Latin. In such cases the English participle is often constructed with "while."

He fell fighting. Pugnans cecidit.
He was cut down while escaping. Fugiens oppressus est.

3. Even where the purely temporal sense is emphasised, it will usually be rendered in Latin by a temporal clause introduced by *dum* with the verb in the present indicative.

Arguing thus with one another, we wasted the entire day. Haec et talia dum inter nos disputamus, totum diem consumpsimus.

4. Where there is any other relation conveyed beside that of time, a circumstantial clause must be used, most commonly a causal clause introduced by *cum* with the verb in the present or imperfect subjunctive according to sequence.

Knowing this, he changed his plan. *Quae cum intellegereret, consilium mutavit.*

If the relation is a conditional relation, a conditional clause must be used.

Doing this, you will prosper. *Quae si facies, bene erit.*

74. The following examples are recommended for study.

Having advanced for a distance of three days' march they turned back, the cavalry covering the entire distance in a single night, and so taking the Menapii quite unawares and unsuspecting.

From this point Marcellus marched across Apulia without any engagement worth relating; for while Hannibal moved only by night, seeking opportunities for ambuscades, Marcellus followed him only in broad daylight and after previously exploring the country.

Seeing that both of the consuls were wounded, and one of them, run through the body by a spear, was in the act of falling lifeless from his horse, the troops fled from the field. With them escaped the other consul, though with two javelin wounds, and Murellus, likewise wounded.

Tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt, atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto, inscos inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt.

*Inde per Apuliam ducti exercitus sine ullo memorando certamine, cum Hannibal nocte signa moveret, locum insidiis quaerens, Marcellus nisi certa luce, et explorato ante, non seque-
retur.*

Milites postquam vulneratos ambo consules, alterum etiam transfixum lancea prolabentem ex equo moribundum videre, tum et ipsi cum altero consule duabus iaculis icto, et Marcello, saucio et ipso, effugerunt.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE INTERCHANGE OF PARTICIPLES AND CLAUSES.

75. The chief difference between English and Latin style is that English uses short independent sentences or compound sentences, while Latin has (in the best period) complex sentences, or periods. Thus in translation from English into Latin the less important **predications** must be subordinated to the more important. Such subordination is most commonly performed by substituting for independent English **predications** phrases involving the Latin perfect participle, or circumstantial clauses introduced by *cum* with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. In the following examples a participial phrase is used in Latin for an independent **predication** in English.

The Germans abandoned all hope of storming the fort and retired across the Rhine.

He raised a large force from the neighbouring tribes and sent them in all directions.

Basilus quickly effected the march and surprised the enemy in the open country.

Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum trans Rhenum sese receperunt.

Magno coacto numero ex finitimi- mis civitatibus in omnes partes mittit.

Basilus celeriter confecto itinere hostes in agris deprehendit.

76. As an equivalent for the perfect participle of intransitive verbs, a circumstantial clause with *cum* and a verb in the pluperfect subjunctive may be used, or, if the connection of events is purely temporal and there is no idea of causal relation, a similar clause with *ubi* (or *cum* with the meaning "at the time when") and a verb in the perfect indicative.

Hannibal retreated to Acerrae; and Marcellus, having shut the gates and posted sentries, that no one might leave the town, at once tried in the market place the men who had had secret relations with the enemy.

The day dawned and the enemy withdrew.

They came to the walls, and because all was still imagined that no one was there.

Spring was now at hand, and Hannibal led his troops out of winter quarters.

Hannibal cum Acerrae recessisset, Marcellus extemplo clausis portis custodibusque dispositis ne quis egredetur quaestionem in foro, de iis qui clam in colloquiis hostium fuerant, habuit.

Ubi illuxit hostes se receperunt.

Ubi ad moenia accessere, quia silentium erat solitudo visa.

Iam ver appetebat, cum Hannibal ex hibernis movit.

77. When two actions or states are contemporaneous and are expressed in English by two independent predictions, a circumstantial clause in Latin with *cum* and the imperfect subjunctive can be used to represent one of them. A Latin present participle can only be used where the connection of events is purely temporal, and even then a temporal clause with *dum* and the present indicative is equally common.*

Hannibal was now fairly near, and Marcellus sent forward the Gaetulans with an officer called Isaeus.

Day was dawning and Caesar led out his forces from the camp.

Hannibal cum iam haud procul abesset, Marcellus Gaetulos, cum praefecto nomine Isaeo, praemittit.

Caesar albente caelo copias castris educit.

78. Latin participial phrases involving the present or perfect participle may be also used to represent English circumstantial subordinate clauses.

* The present participle is fairly common in Caesar, but is much less used in Cicero and Livy.

(i) Time:

On receiving this reply Perseus was convinced that his throne was now assured to him, and resolved to obtain influence in Greece.

I have written more in the short time since the government was overthrown than during many years while it was still in power.

(ii) Cause:

Fulvius referred to the Senate at Rome the men of Nuceria and Acerrae, who complained that they had nowhere to live, because Acerrae had been in part burnt down and Nuceria totally destroyed.

In the course of the march the force had been swelled by volunteers, for both the veterans whose time of service was ended, and the young warriors also, spontaneously offered their services.

(iii) Manner:

The festival was celebrated with tremendous enthusiasm, the more so because the monarch, by doffing his crown and purple robe and other articles of royal dress, put himself in appearance on a level with the rest.

(iv) Condition:

If these were vanquished or prevented from returning home, they were convinced that no one would thereafer cross over into Britain, at least for the purpose of attacking the island.

Perseus hoc accepto responso firmatum iam omnino sibi regnum existimans, opes apud Graecos parare statuit.

Plura brevi tempore eversa, quam multis annis stante re publica scripsimus.

Nucerinos et Acerranos querentes, ubi habitarent non esse, Acerris ex parte incensis, Nuceria deleta, Romanum Fulvius ad senatum misit.

In ipso itinere auctum voluntariis agmen erat, offerentibus sese ultro et veteribus militibus perfunctis iam militia, et iuvenibus.

Laetitia ingenti celebrati festi dies, eo magis quod rex dempto capitis insigni, purpuraque, atque alio regio habitu, aequaverat ceteris se in speciem.

His superatis aut redditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant.

I could name Romans from the Sabine land, country folk who are neighbours and friends of mine, upon whose farms practically no task of importance is ever undertaken if they are absent from home.

(v) Concession :

Though the number of the senators was thus reduced, he resolved to select no others, that their very fewness might render the class the more contemptible.

The town could not be carried by assault because the ditch was so wide and the walls so high, although the defenders were only few.

(vi) Attendant Circumstances :

They were married, Servius not so much sanctioning the match as declining to prevent it.

He gave instructions for the grain to be brought into camp, appointing guards to escort these stores.

Possum nominare ex agro Sabino rusticos Romanos, vicinos et familiares meos, quibus absentibus numquam fere ulla in agro maiora opera flunt.

Ita patrum numero imminuto statuit nullos in patres legere, quo contemptior paucitate ipsa ordo esset.

Oppidum propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendantibus expugnari non potuit.

Iunguntur nuptiis magis non prohibente Servio quam approbante.

Devehi frumentum in castra iussit, praesidiis datis quae commeatus eos prosequerentur.

79. Latin participial phrases with all three participles may be used to translate English relative clauses.

The cavalry destroyed those who were trying to escape.

He ordered the arrest of the envoys, who had already started homewards.

Those who are doomed to die salute thee.

Fugientes equitatus oppressit.

Legatos iam domum profectos reprehendi iussit.

Morituri te salutant.

80. For the use of the Latin participle in translating the English gerund and verbal noun see § 88, and for its use in translating abstract substantives see § 8.

81. The Latin present participle most commonly represents either English time clauses introduced by the conjunctions *while* or *as*, or prepositional phrases expressing accompanying circumstances.

I met them as they were approaching. Advenientibus obvius fui.

They crowded round with tears in their eyes. Lacrimantes circumfundebantur.

82. The Latin future participle is not of frequent occurrence. It represents a variety of different expressions in English, e.g. *going to*, *about to*, *on the point of*, *destined to*, *intending to*, but is not used in good Latin to represent an English gerundial infinitive of purpose or a purpose clause.

With such praiseworthy acts did Persons seek to make popular the commencement of his reign—a commencement destined to have a very different ending.

At the close of the war in Africa, when on the point of transferring his army to Spain, he was offering a sacrifice.

It seemed likely that they might defend themselves with the town walls if not with their swords.

In person he made for the Lower Sea by way of Campania, and it was probable he might attack Naples in order to secure a town upon the coast.

His laudibus Perseus initia principatus commendabat, haud pares inceptis habitura exitus.

Perfecto Africo bello, exercitum in Hispaniam traiecturus sacrificabat.

Moenibus se certe, si non armis, videbantur defensuri.

Ipse per agrum Campanum mare inferum petit, oppugnaturus Neapolim, ut urbem maritimam haberet.

83. It may be added that the Latin love of brevity makes the use of the perfect participle of supreme importance. It is one of the commonest idioms in the language, and no one can hope even to begin writing Latin composition until he can employ the perfect participle readily and accurately.

CHAPTER IX.

THE ENGLISH GERUND AND VERBAL NOUN.

84. The English gerund and verbal noun in *-ing* when used as subject or object of a verb are translated by the Latin infinitive (see § 156). When the verbal noun is used with prepositions, it is as a rule translated by the Latin gerund, or, the Latin gerund and prepositions. When the English gerund is used with prepositions, it is as a rule rendered by the Latin gerundive construction.

85. Both verbals, however, are far more commonly used in English than are the gerunds and gerundive in Latin, which often cannot be used to translate them. The coincidence that the gerund and verbal noun, which were in the first instance merely a single noun connected by root with the verb, *e.g.* “warning,” came to have the same form as the present participle made it possible to form a gerund or verbal noun corresponding to every participle in *-ing*.

Beginners often have a difficulty in distinguishing the verbal noun and gerund from the present participle, and when in doubt about a form in *-ing* should parse it. The gerund and verbal noun are substantives, the present participle an adjective.

86. The English gerund when used as the subject or object of a sentence is translated by the Latin infinitive, being the equivalent of the English infinitive with “to.”

I hate writing.

Scribere odi.

The making of mistakes is human.

Errare est humanum.

The putting of a Roman citizen into bonds is a crime.

Facinus est vincire civem Romanum.

They began fighting.

Coeptum est disceptari.

He mentioned your going.

Dixit te ire, or ivisse.

Do you not recollect my saying so?

Meministisne me haec dicere?

87. (a) When the English verbal noun is used with prepositions, it is translated by the cases of the Latin gerund, and by the gerund and prepositions.

The following are parallel cases of the English verbal noun and Latin gerunds:—

Genitive : of going.....*eundi*.
of hunting.....*venandi*.

Dative : to or for going.....*eundo*.
to or for hunting....*venando*.

Ablative : by, in, or from going....*eundo*.
by, in, or from hunting...*venando*.

(b) The English gerund and its object when constructed with prepositions are translated by the Latin gerundive construction. If the English verb corresponds to a Latin transitive verb and the English preposition to a Latin case usage, the noun which is the object of the English gerund is put in that case, and the gerundive (a passive verbal adjective) constructed in agreement with it. If the English gerund is governed by a preposition which requires to be translated by a Latin preposition, the noun which is its object is in Latin governed by the preposition, and the gerundive agrees with it.

The following are examples of the translation of English verbal nouns and gerunds by the Latin gerund and gerundive:—

They scoured the forests in hunting. *Venando peragrare saltus.*

They wasted time at first in making excuses. *Illi primum purgando tempus terunt.*

The prospect of putting an end to the mistake. *Spec finiendi erroris.*

These were seized with the desire to found a city. *Cupido urbis condendae capit.*

The policy of founding a city and making it strong by peace or war.

Consilium urbis condendae, bello
ac pace firmandae.

He fell to seeking everywhere the means of provoking war.

Undique materiam excitandi belli
quaerebat.

Three commissioners for founding colonies and making allotments of land.

Tres viri coloniis deducendis, agris
dividundis.

He established a number of other rites, and places for performing such rites.

Multa alia sacrificia locaque sacris
faciendis dedicavit.

He thereupon turned his attention to appointing priests.

Tum sacerdotibus creandis animum adiecit.

His courage in recovering his ancestral kingdom.

Animus in regno avito recipiendo.

To this day also the same authority is exercised in making laws or magistrates.

Hodie quoque in legibus magistris
rogandis usurpatur idem ius.

It was by giving rather than receiving benefits that they made friends.

Magis dandis quam accipiendis
beneficiis amicitias parabant.

88. In the following cases the English gerund and verbal noun cannot be translated by the Latin gerund or gerundive:—

1. The English verbal noun or gerund with the preposition *of* depending on an adjective is frequently represented by a verb and an infinitive in Latin. “I was afraid of doing this” is equivalent to “I feared to do this,” and in Latin *hoc facere timui*.

I should be chary of saying this.
Surely you were not afraid of going?

Quod quidem confirmare nolim.
Num timebas ire?

I should have been ashamed of saying I did not understand.

Puderet me dicere non intelligere.

2. After verbs of hindering, preventing, doubting, the English gerund is represented by a dependent clause in the subjunctive. Such clauses are introduced by *quominus*, *ne*, and, when the principal verb is negative, by *quin*.

Nothing prevented Cuesar from pursuing the enemy. Nihil Caesarem impedivit* quin hostes sequeretur.

I don't doubt his thinking so. Non dubito quin ita censeat.

I am doubtful about his caring to go. Dubito num ire velit.

But with verbs signifying "to decree," "to propose," and with a few others, especially *facere*, *curare*, *locare*, *conducere*, the gerundival construction is regularly used to translate an English gerund governing an object.

Caesar saw to the building of a bridge over the Saône. Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum curavit.

The Censors issued a contract for paving the streets with flints. Censores vias silice sternendas locaverunt.

89. When the English gerund or verbal noun is constructed with a preposition expressing a time relation, e.g. "before," "after," "on," it is translated by a participle or equivalent clause.

On hearing this the Germans retreated. Hoc audito Germani se receperunt.

After advancing three miles he reached the Rhine. Tria milia passuum progressus ad flumen Rhenum pervenit.

On coming to Rome Metellus convened the Senate. Cum Romam venisset Metellus senatum convocavit.

"Before" with the gerund can only be translated by a time clause in Latin.

Before leaving the city Milo changed his clothes. Milo antequam urbe excessit vestem mutavit.

90. There is a grammatical difference in English between a gerund or verbal noun and an abstract noun expressing verbal action, although the forms are often the same. This difference is apparent in the case of the gerund and the abstract noun derived from the same verb, for the first will be followed by an object, and the second by an objective genitive. This distinction holds good in Latin.

Compare (a)

Romulus was alive before the founding of the city. Ante urbem conditam vivebat Romulus.

and (b)

Before founding the city Romulus avenged Numitor. Romulus antequam urbem condidit Numitorem ultus est.

(a)

There was talk of the town's surrendering. Agitur de deditione urbis.

and (b)

There was talk of surrendering the town. Agitur de urbe dedenda.

91. For the various methods of translating English abstract substantives into Latin see Ch. II. The tendency of modern English is to get rid of the ambiguity by using terminations other than *-ing* for abstract verbal nouns, e.g. *above*, *foundation* for *founding*, and *surrender* for *surrendering*. There are, however, limits to the process, as some abstract nouns in *-ing* are firmly established in use, e.g. *meeting*, *speaking*, *parting*, and *suffering*. Such nouns require care in translation.

CHAPTER

THE ENGLISH INFINITIVE.

92. The uses of the infinitive in English and Latin do not correspond accurately.

Certain usages, however, are common to both languages.

The English infinitive is translated by the Latin infinitive:—

- (i) when it is used as the subject of a verb (see § 156);
- (ii) in certain phrases (not very common in English) where it is used as a predicate with the object; e.g.,

He felt himself to be beaten. *Sensit se victimum esse.*

(iii) more commonly when it is used as a predicate after copulative verbs and passives; *e.g.*,

Caesar was said to have treated his enemies with forbearance. Dicitur Caesar clemens erga inimicos fuisse.

93. The use of the infinitive after verbs of incomplete predication is the same in English and Latin. The infinitive follows

- (i) verbs expressing ability, *posse*, *queo*, and *nequeo*;
- (ii) impersonal verbs expressing obligation (see § 159), *oportet*, *decet*, *dedecet*, *convenit*;
- (iii) *licet mihi*, "I may."

94. The use of the infinitive as object in English is virtually the same as the use of the verbal noun and gerund as object (see § 86). The objective infinitive is used after the following verbs both in English and Latin: to begin, *coepisse* and *incipere*; to teach, *docere*; to learn, *discere*; to allow, *sinere* and *pati*; to bid, *iubere*; to forbid, *vetare*; to fear (but see § 114), *timere*, *metuere*, *vereri*; to wish, *velle* and *cupere*; to determine, *statuere*, *constituere*.

95. After verbs of "hoping," "promising," and "threatening" the English objective infinitive, which is used when the principal verb and the infinitive have the same subject, must be rendered in Latin by the future infinitive, with its subject expressed in the accusative.

On this part of the subject he promises to speak next. De hac parte pollicetur se deinceps esse dicturum.

He threatened to stab him on the spot. Se eum extemplo gladio transfixurum minatur.

96. Five uses of the English gerundial infinitive remain to be dealt with. It is a safe principle to think twice before translating an English gerundial infinitive by a Latin infinitive.

97. 1. The English gerundial infinitive is used objectively to express a dependent command. Except in the case of *iubere* and *retare* above, it is never so used in Latin. Therefore in dependent commands the English infinitive is represented by a finite objective clause in Latin introduced by *ut* (negative *ne*), with the verb in the subjunctive.

I pray you to listen to me kindly and with attention. Quaeso ut me benigne attenteque audiatis.

I pray you, gentlemen, do not take this amiss. Quod quaeso, iudices, ne moleste patiamini.

With tears he besought them to undervalue the matter. Ab iis flens petivit, ut negotium susciperent.

To Cassivellaunus he gave orders and commands not to injure Mandubracius or the Trinobantes. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio, ne Trinobantibus noceat.

98. By a favourite idiom any dependent *positive* command may be expressed in the subjunctive without *ut*, especially after verbs of entreaty in the first person (*quaeso*, *oro*, *precor*, *obtestor*, *testor*); the potentials *velim*, *vellem*, *nolim*, *nollem*, *malim*, *mallem*; and the imperatives *fac*, *facite*, *cura*, *curate*.

<i>Please let me know how our friend Cicero is.</i>	Fac sciam, quid noster Cicero agat.
<i>Take care and keep in health.</i>	Cura vafieas.
<i>I should like you to attend to this point.</i>	Velim hoc cures.
<i>I should have preferred you to be here.</i>	Mallem affuisses.
<i>I beg you keep in mind that my purpose is not to find fault with the dead man.</i>	Vos quaeso memoria teneatis, non mihi hoc esse propositum, ut accusem mortuum.
<i>Next I beg you, when I am speaking upon and clearing up each particular point, do not silently take into consideration all that is antagonistic thereto, but wait until the end, and permit me to preserve my own plan of speech.</i>	Tum autem postulo, cum ego de una quaque re dicam et diluam, ne ipsi quae contraria sint taciti cogitationi subiciatis, sed ad extreum exspectetis, meque meum dicendi ordinem servare patiamini.
<i>Permit your poetry to be bruited on the lips of men, and to spread within limits as wide as the Roman language.</i>	Sine per ora hominum versus tui ferantur iisdemque quibus lingua Romana spatiis pervagentur.

99. 2. The English gerundial infinitive is used to express purpose, and when so used is never rendered in Latin by the infinitive. When the English gerundial infinitive expresses purpose, it is translated by a dependent clause introduced by *ut* (negative *ne*), with the verb in the subjunctive. This is the only admissible construction when the infinitive is negative.

The assassins concealed themselves behind a fence, erecting steps against it, so as to shoot their missiles therefrom upon the passer-by as if from a wall.

The king, on learning of the panic from the terrified cries of the fugitives, stabbed himself through the heart, in order not to be taken alive.

Post maceriem insidiatores se abdiderunt, gradibus astrictis, ut ex ea, velut e muro, tela in praeteruentem conicerent.

Tumultum ut ex pavido clamore fugientium exceptit rex, traiecit ferro pectus, ne vivus caperetur.

Both in dependent commands and in purpose clauses *ne* is the invariable Latin negative; it is combined with the following pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs: *quis*, “any-one”; *ulus*, “any”; *umquam*, “ever”; *usquam*, “anywhere,” etc. The second of two coordinate indirect commands or purpose clauses, if negative, is introduced by *nere* or (more rarely) by *neque*.

100. In affirmative clauses only the following varieties are possible:—

(a) Wherever the principal sentence involves a convenient antecedent, whether substantive or pronoun, the dependent final clause, *if affirmative*, may be introduced by the appropriate relative (pronoun, adjective, or adverb) in lieu of *ut*.

He appointed persons to arbitrate between the tribes, to assess the matter in dispute and determine the penalty.

Arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

There was given them a place to dwell in, on the other side of the Tiber.

Locus, ubi habitarent, trans Tiberim datur.

We have been banished not only far from our country and from Italy, but far from our foe, to a place wherein we are to grow old in exile and find no prospect nor opportunity of wiping out our disgrace, or mollifying the anger of our countrymen, or even of dying with honour.

Nos non solum a patria procul Italiaque, sed ab hoste etiam relegati sumus, ubi senescamus in exilio, ne qua spes, ne qua occasio abolendae ignominiae, ne qua placandae civium irae, ne qua denique bene moriendi sit.

Hence the use of *quo* as a final conjunction (= *ut*) in clauses involving or suggesting a comparative force.

Next, in order to give to the senators additional power, he raised their number, which had been thinned by murder, to a total of 300.

Deinde quo plus virium in senatu faceret, caedibus deminutum patrum numerum ad trecentorum summam explevit.

To previous reasons there was now added this, that Perseus might the sooner be declared a public enemy.

Caesar decided that he must punish them the more severely, in order that the privileges of envoys might for the future be more carefully maintained by the savages.

(b) The following cases of the Latin gerund or attributive gerundive may also be used:—

(i) the dative of purpose:

They elected a commission of three to make allotments.

Tres viros agris dividundis creaverunt. ς

(ii) the accusative with *in* or *ad*, or the genitive with *causa* or *gratia*:

When admitted they heaped their shields upon the girl and so killed her, either to the end that it might seem that they had captured the citadel by assault, or to make an example of her.

Accepti puellam obrutam armis necavere, seu ut vi capta arx videretur, seu prodendi exempli causa.

Is there amongst the human race a finer nature than that of those who deem themselves born to aid and safeguard and preserve mankind?

Quae est melior igitur in hominum genere natura quam eorum, qui se natos ad homines iuvandos, tutandos, conservandos, arbitrantur?

Those who had been sent to seek supplies.

Qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant.

(iii) the attributive gerundive in agreement with a noun:

It is said that the children were entrusted to his wife Larentia to educate.

Pueros Larentiae uxori educandos datos ferunt.

He made over the booty to 300 of the Cretans to take charge of and escort it to the camp.

Praedam custodiendam ducentamque in castra trecentis Cretensium dedit.

Haec ad priora accessere, quo matutinus hostis Perseus iudicaretur. ς

In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris ius legatorum conservaretur.

(c) An accusative supine, if the main verb is only conveying the idea of motion.

We are come to warn, not to implore you. Admonitum veniamus te, non flagitatum.

About 4000 men went off to find provisions. Ad quattuor milia hominum frumentatum egressa.

He sent one of his party to consult his father at Rome. Ex suis unum sciscitatum Romam ad patrem mittit.

Such verbs are *ire*, *venire*, *ducere*, *mittere*, and some of their compounds. The idiom is an instance of the use of the accusative as the goal of motion.

All the foregoing means of expressing purpose are affirmative only, never negative.

101. In practice, where several English infinitives of purpose occur in one sentence, the Latin construction will be varied to avoid monotony.

The Senate resolved to send envoys to inquire into the condition of Macedonia, and Aulus Postumius was at once commissioned to start thither. Patres decreverunt mittendos esse legatos, qui Macedoniae res inspicerent, et statim Aulo Postumio negotium datum.

102. 3. An English infinitive depending upon an adjective will often be turned by a Latin gerund or gerundive:

He showed himself quick to grasp facts. Facilem se in rebus cognoscendis praebebat.

Very loth to write a letter. Ad litteras scribendas pigerrimus.

Set more ready to undergo every danger. Paratiore ad omnia pericula subeunda.

or by the dative (of purpose) or objective genitive of a substantive.

Anxious to fight. Appetens pugnae.

Fit to rule. Capax imperii.

103. Where it expresses result, the English infinitive is represented by the subjunctive with *ut quam*, *quam ut*, or *quam qui* in such expressions as—

He was too false to be trusted (or to trust). Infidior erat quam ut crederes (or cui crederes).

A grief too great for me to describe. Dolor maior quam quem (ut) dicere possim.

He is wise to have abandoned the plan. Sapiens est qui hoc consilium reliquerit.

and by the subjunctive with a relative, especially after *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, and other adjectives expressing fitness or the opposite.

No person seemed better qualified to speak on that particular period of life. Nulla videbatur aptior persona quae de illa aetate loqueretur.

104. 4. An English infinitive depending upon a substantive is in Latin represented—

(i) by a gerund or gerundive:

The desire to win. Cupido vincendi.

(ii) or by various periphrases:

His fitness to command speedily made him the leader. Mox dux factus est, cum esset natura aptus ad imperium.

They vied with one another in their efforts to excel. Inter se certabant ut praestantiores viderentur.

105. 5. The English infinitive used parenthetically is a variety of the infinitive expressing purpose, and is translated by a dependent clause introduced by *ut* or *ne* with the verb in the subjunctive.

For, not to leave you under a wrong impression, it was not by any orders of mine that the Albans approached the hills. Nam, ne vos falsa opinio teneat iniussu meo Albani subiere ad montes.

To tell you what is the solace and delight of my old age, I can never get enough of this particular form of amusement. Satiari hac delectatione non possum, ut meae senectutis requiem oblectamentumque noscatis.

CHAPTER XI.

THE ENGLISH CONJUNCTION "THAT."

106. The English conjunction *that* is used to introduce substantival and adverbial clauses.

Substantival clauses may be used either (i) subjectively or (ii) objectively. In both cases the English dependent clause is usually represented by a phrase in Latin, in which the Latin infinitive takes the place of the English finite verb, and the English subject is rendered by the Latin accusative, which stands as subject.

107. (i) An English substantival clause which is virtually subject is as a rule constructed in apposition to an impersonal subject *it*.

It is an evil that rulers should make mistakes. *Malum est peccare principes.*

108. But when such impersonal phrases as "it is said," "it is thought," "it seems," "it is believed," etc., in English are followed by a substantival clause with a personal subject, Latin prefers a personal construction.

It is said that Milo carried an ox Olympiae per stadium bovem humeris impositum Milo sustentasse dicitur.

It seemed to them that Tatius and his Subines were acting but tardily. *Lente agere his Tatius Sabinique visi sunt.*

By this time rumours were beginning to be heard that Caesar had fallen back from Gergovia. *Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur.*

109. A substantival clause used as the subject may also be introduced by the Latin *quod*, denoting the fact that. The verb of such a clause is in the indicative.

To this was added the fact that Dunnorix had affirmed in the Aeduan assembly that Caesar was offering him the position of chief.

Accedebat *huc quod in concilio Aeduanorum Dunnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri.*

110. (ii) A substantival clause used as object is most commonly used in dependent statements after verbs of assertion or perception; in such cases the accusative and infinitive construction is invariably used in Latin.

They all brought intelligence that forces were being raised and an army concentrated to one point.

Omnis nuntiaverunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduciri.

Thanks to many a teacher I have from early youth been convinced that life has nothing greatly worth the seeking, except only merit and honour.

Multorum praceptis mihi ab adolescentia suasi, nihil esse in vita magno opere expetendum nisi laudem atque honestum.

He learnt from his prisoners that the river Sambre was not more than ten miles from the camp.

Intellegebat ex captiis Sabim flumen ab castris non amplius milia passuum decem abesse.

Instead of *dicere*, "say," followed by a negative (*non, nullus, nemo, numquam*, etc.) Latin commonly substitutes *negare*, "say . . . not."

Collatinus said that there was no need of talking.

Collatinus negat verbis opus esse.

They say it cannot be done.

Negant id fieri posse.

111. Beginners often find difficulty in recognising dependent statements in English because the conjunction that is frequently omitted, the statement being simply put in juxtaposition to the verb.

Cato says Murena is a dancer.

Affirmat Cato saltatorem esse L. Murenam.

Titurius kept crying out they would be too late.

Titurius ea sero facturos clamabat.

112. Another difficulty is due to the ambiguous use of the English past tense in dependent statements. Normally in English after a principal verb in a past tense the imperfect is used of an action contemporaneous with that of the principal verb, and is rendered in Latin by the present infinitive; the pluperfect is used of an action previous to that of the principal verb, and is rendered in Latin by the perfect infinitive; the verb with the auxiliary *should* or *would* is used of an action subsequent to that of the principal verb, and is rendered in Latin by the future infinitive.

I said that you were making a mistake. *Dixi te errare.*

I said that you had made a mistake. *Dixi te erravisse.*

I said that you would make a mistake. *Dixi te erraturum esse.*

A difficulty, however, arises with regard to the translation of the English past tense in dependent statements. It is sometimes used instead of the past perfect in dependent statements referring to a fixed point of time in the past, e.g. "I said that you came a week ago," and also as it represents the simple present of the direct statement, "Titurius said that he thought Caesar had gone"—he actually said "I think Caesar has gone." The best method of discovering how to translate the English past tense in a dependent statement is to put the dependent statement in the direct form, *i.e.* to quote the words used: if the verb in the direct statement is in the present the Latin infinitive will be present, if the verb is in the past the Latin infinitive will be past.

He said his good luck was proved by the war with the Helvetii. *Dixit felicitatem suam Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam.*

(His actual words were "It has been proved," *perspecta est.*)

He said he favoured the Helvetii owing to this connection. *Dixit se Helvetiis favere propter affinitatem.*

(His words were "I favour," *faveo.*)

113. Instead of the future infinitive passive, which is rarely used, Latin prefers the periphrasis with *fore ut* or *futurum ut* and a (consecutive) subjunctive. In the case of verbs which have no supine-stem this is the only course open.

I thought the law as to extortion would be repealed. Arbitrabar fore ut lex de pecuniis repetendis tolleretur.

114. An English dependent statement after verbs of fearing, if positive, is rendered in Latin by a clause introduced by *ne* with the verb in the subjunctive; a negative statement may be introduced by *ut*, or the positive statement may be negatived by *non* in the ordinary way.

Our men were not afraid that they would be surrounded. Neque timebant nostri ne circumvenirentur.

They said they were afraid that supplies of corn might not be brought up sufficiently easily. Timere dicebant ut res frumentaria satis commode supportari posset.

He was afraid that he might not be able to withstand the enemy's attack. Verebatur ne hostium impetum sustinere non posset.

115. Certain verbs expressive of emotional states admit the accusative and infinitive construction; e.g. *dolere, acerbe and aegre ferre, gaudere, laetari, mirari.*

I am glad, and rejoice extremely, that this matter has been done with. Haec perfecta esse gaudeo vehementerque laetor.

I am less astonished that there is some doubt as to the enemy's leader having been surrendered and sent beneath the yoke. Minus miror obscurum esse de hostium duce dedito missoque sub iugum.

These verbs may also be followed by semi-causal clauses introduced by *quod.*

They are vexed that you have the breath of life, that you utter even a word, that you have even human form. Quod spiratis, quod vocem mititis, quod formas hominum habetis indignantur.

You are delighted that I promise to come to you. *Gaudes quod me venturum esse polliceor.*

116. Statements depending on a verb expressing doubt and actually or virtually negative, or on the phrase *non dubium est*, are not rendered by the accusative and infinitive, but by *quin* with the subjunctive.

If anyone paid attention, there is no doubt that he could notice the reason why some men speak better than others.

Non est dubium quin, si quis animadverterit quid sit quare alii melius quam alii dicant, id notare possit.

*He did not doubt that the Romans would deprive the Aedu*s* of their freedom.*

*Non dubitabat quin Romani libertatem Aedu*s* erupturi essent.*

117. An English dependent statement involving a verb of obligation is frequently the equivalent of a dependent command, and is so rendered in Latin. See § 97.

Ambiorix ordered the command to be given that they should throw their weapons from a distance.

Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet ut procul tela coiciant.

118. The conjunction *that* is used in adverbial clauses to express purpose or result.

119. Purpose is commonly expressed in English by the gerundial infinitive; but if the subject of the principal verb is not the same as that of the dependent verb, a dependent clause introduced by *that* takes the place of the infinitive. Such a clause is rendered in Latin by a similar clause introduced by *ut* (negative *ne*). The verb in such a clause is in the subjunctive.

Marellus ordered the gates to be shut, that no one might escape. *Marcellus portas claudi iussit, ne quis effugeret.*

The same varieties of expression are permissible as in translating the gerundial infinitive when used to express purpose. See § 99.

120. Clauses expressing result are in English introduced by *that*, and anticipated by some such word as "so" or "such" in the main sentence. They are rendered in Latin by a clause introduced by *ut* with the verb in the subjunctive.

The negatives in all such clauses are *non*, *nullus*, *nemo*, *nunquam*, *nusquam*, *non . . . neque*, *neque . . . neque*, *ne . . . quidem*, etc. (never *ne*).

For more than three hours the fight went so that hope of victory inclined to neither side.

Pugnatum est amplius tres horas,
ita ut neutro inclinaret spes.

There was ready to hand such a quantity of stone and wood that it was possible to have had a wall thrown up and towers erected.

Et saxorum ad manum silvestrisque materiae tantum erat,
ut vel murus obici turresque excitari possent.

The cliffs on either hand are so sheer that one can scarcely look down without the eyes swimming and the brain being dizzy.

Rupes utrimque ita abscissae sunt,
ut despici vix sine vertigine simul oculorum animique possit.

121. Instead of *ut* is, *ut ea*, *ut id*, *ut ii*, *ut eum*, *ut eius*, *ut ibi*, *ut eo*, *ut inde*, etc., i.e. wherever there is a convenient substantival antecedent, the corresponding relative may be used in a result clause.

Who is so foolish, be he never so young, as to take it for granted that he will live until nightfall?

Quis est tam stultus, quamvis sit adulescens, cui sit exploratum se ad vesperum esse victurum?

Where the result clause is introduced by a relative, a pronominal adjective (*is*, *ille*, *hic*) is often added to determine the substantival antecedent.

Perfect wisdom I always considered to be such as could speak with fluency and elegance upon the most weighty questions.

Hanc enim perfectam philosophiam semper iudicavi, quae de maximis quaestionibus posset copiose ornataque dicere.

The spot was such that there was a view down from it.

Is erat locus, unde despectus esset.

The terms were such as no one could endure.

Eae erant condiciones, quas nemo tolerare posset.

122. Expressions like “*of a kind to . . .*,” “*such as to . . .*,” “*of such sort as to . . .*,” are rendered by a Latin relative pronoun or adverb and a consecutive relative clause with a generalising force (generic subjunctive).

Out of all that host, scarce 1200 were found to possess arms, and a mere handful of horse-soldiers were found to have brought their steeds with them.

After inspecting the country as far as opportunity offered to one who had not the courage to leave his ship, Volusenus came back to the camp five days later.

We have no other place in which to take refuge.

Returning to the Danube, to their great joy they found the river covered with ice so thick as to seem likely to bear any burden.

Vix mille ducenti ex tanta multitudine, qui arma haberent, perpauci equites, qui equos secum eduxissent, inventi sunt.

Volusenus perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit qui navi egredi non auderet, quinto die in castra revertitur.

Nihil est praeterea, quo confugere possimus.

Ad Histrum regressi, non sine ingenti laetitia flumen alta concretum glacie offenderunt, quae nullum onus recusare videretur.

123. The difference of meaning, according as the relative clause is in the indicative (simple attributive) or the subjunctive (generic) mood, may be seen from the following.

There are certain men who assert . . .

Sunt qui dicunt . . .

There are men (of a class) to assert . . .

Sunt qui dicant . . .

Yet there are men found to say so. It is unkind of them, but nevertheless they do.

At sunt qui dicant. Dure illi quidem, sed tamen dicunt.

You scoff as though I were maintaining that men not yet born are to be pitied, and not simply that all who have died are to be pitied.

Ita iocaris quasi ego dicam, eos miseros qui nati non sint, et non eos miseros qui mortui sunt.

124. Under the same heading comes the use of *is*... *qui* and the subjunctive in such sentences as the following:

"*And,*" said he, "*I am not the one of you to be most afraid of the risk of death.*"

We are not the sort of men for even our enemies to censure without in the same breath complimenting us.

"*Neque is sum,*" inquit, "*qui gravissime e vobis mortis periculo terrear.*"

Neque ii sumus quos vituperare ne irrimici quidem possint, nisi ut simul laudent.

CHAPTER XII.

ENGLISH AND LATIN TENSES. SEQUENCE AND DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

125. Comparative Table of English and Latin Tenses.

[See next page.]

126. Within this scheme the following differences should be observed.

The English continuous present is often used in a future sense.

When are you coming to Rome? *Quando Romam venies?*

127. The English simple present used in dependent clauses where the principal verb refers to future time must in Latin (as often in French) be rendered by the future or future-perfect.

*Why, think you, when I enter upon
that course, have I no pitfalls to
fear?*

*Quid censes, cum iter ingressus
ero, nullasne insidias extime-
scendas?*

*Bear this in mind when you give
the battle-signal.*

*Huius memor esto, cum iam
pugnae signum dabis.*

*There is good advice in that well-
known Greek proverb, "Let each
man practise the trade he knows
best."*

*Bene illo proverbio Graecorum
praecepitur, quam quisque norit
artem, in hoc se exerceat.*

*If there are three divisions, when
one has got rid of two of them,
one must needs have the third left.*

*Qui e tripartita divisione duas
partes absolverit, huic necesse
est restare tertiam.*

*Come now; even if he obeys, is it
in our wishes or in our power to
treat this fellow (henceforth) as
a citizen?*

*Age, si paruerit, hoc civi uti aut
volumus aut possumus?*

*It is no excuse for a fault, that you
committed it to oblige a friend.*

*Nulla est excusatio peccati, is
amici causa peccaveris.*

COMPARATIVE TABLE OF ENGLISH AND LATIN TENSES.

PRIMARY.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.		
		I am loved	I am being loved	amor (present)
Present	Simple Continuous	I love	amo (present)	
		I am loving		
	Perfect Perfect Continuous	I have loved		
		I have been loving	amatus sum (perfect)	
Future	Simple Continuous	I shall love		
		I shall be loving	amabo	
	Perfect Perfect Continuous	I shall have loved		
		I shall have been loving	amavero	
SECONDARY (HISTORIC).			,	,
Past	Simple	I loved	amavi (perfect aorist)	
	Continuous Perfect	I was loving	amabam (imperfect)	
		I had loved	amavaram (pluperfect)	
			,	,
	Simple Continuous	I was loved	amatus sum (perfect aorist)	
	Perfect Perfect Continuous	I was being loved	amabam (imperf.)	
		I had been loved	amavaram (pluperf.)	

But where the dependent clause refers to a fact or a truth independent of the main verb, it will take whatever tense is appropriate.

The law of Nature, which maintains and safeguards the good of man, will decide.

Lex ipsa naturae, quae utilitatem hominum conservat et continet, decernet.

128. The English present is frequently used of habits or what occurs habitually. If the repetition or customariness of the act or state is an important element in the sense, it must be turned by some Latin phrase expressive of habit.

I constantly wonder.

Saepenumero mirari soleo.

On the customary date when the priests give in the names of the persons whom they account most deserving of the office of priest.

Illo die quo sacerdotes solent nominare quos dignissimos sacerdotio iudicant.

129. The English simple present in the passive voice is used to express the present result of a past action (cp. the Greek perfect), in which case it must be rendered by the Latin perfect.

I am persuaded that this is true.

Persuasum est mihi hoc verum esse.

Your foes are vanquished, your warfare ended.

Hostes devicti sunt, debellatum est.

The Latin present only gives the process, not the result.

I am being persuaded.

Persuadetur mihi.

Your enemies are being vanquished.

Hostes devincuntur.

130. The English simple past is used in a great number of cases in which it cannot be translated by the Latin perfect (aorist).

131. Wherever the English simple past expresses continuous, repeated, or habitual action, it must be translated by the Latin imperfect. As a matter of fact, it is

a commoner equivalent of the Latin imperfect than⁴ is the continuous past.

The phantom kept its place, and continued beckoning with its finger like one calling.

Stabat effigies innuebatque digito similis vocanti.

So music flourished in Greece, and everyone learnt to sing to the lute; indeed, the man who could not do so was not considered to have had a proper education.

Ergo in Graecia musici floruerunt, discabantque onines fidibus canere; nec, qui nesciebat, satis excultus doctina putabatur.

After his expulsion from Syracuse the despot Dionysius used to keep a boys' school in Corinth.

Dionysius tyrannus, Syracusis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docebatur.

An attempt was being made to get Verginius Rufus elected one of the Board of Five.

Inter quinque viros creabatur Verginius Rufus.

At last, as their horses came to a standstill, jammed together in one crowd, man grappling with man, they tried to unhorse one another.

Stantibus et confertis postremo turba equis, vir virum amplexus detrahebat equo.

As was natural in a crisis, the Senate was at once convened, and Publius Cornelius wished to recall to the city's defence every commander and army in Italy.

Ut in re trepida, senatu extemplo vocato, P. Cornelius omnes duces exercitusque ex tota Italia ad urbis praesidium revocabat.

132. In narrative the English simple and continuous past are rendered by the Latin historic present whenever the events related are to be brought vividly before the reader.

Hannibal sent the Numidians across the river to attack the Roman watering parties.

Hannibal Numidas ad invadendos Romanorum aquatores trans flumen mittit.

The historic present in Caesar is the rule rather than the exception; and as it is foreign to good English prose, it is often overlooked by beginners.

133. The historic present is invariably used after *dum* when it means "while," *i.e.* "within the time that." The tense of the principal verb does not affect the tense of the verb in the dependent clause.

While these events were in progress, Sabinus made his way as far as the limits of the Veneti.

While his friends were coming, he walked up and down.

I shall feel less anxious while I am reading it; but as soon as I have got it read, I shall at once feel nervous again.

They were cut down while hesitating upon the bank, uncertain whether to fight or to fly.

Dum haec geruntur, Sabinus in Verellorum fines pervenit.

Dum veniunt amici, inambulavit.

Ego securior dum lego, statimque timebo cum legero.

Dum cunctantur in ripis inter pugnae fugaeque consilium oppressi.

134. The English simple past often is used loosely for the past perfect, in which case it must be translated by the Latin pluperfect.

He failed to fulfil what he (had) promised.

The reader. I recollect, once pronounced some of his words boldly, and one of my uncle's friends stopped him and had the passage read over again. "But you knew what he meant?" enquired my uncle. "Yes," was the reply. "Then why did you want to stop him? We have lost ten lines or more, thanks to your interrupting him."

Non exsolvit id quod promiserat.

Memini quendam ex amicis, cum lector quaeram perperam pronuntiassem, revocasse et repeti coegisse, huic avunculum meum dixisse "Intellexeras nempe?" Cum ille adnusset, "Cur ergo revocabas? decem amplius versus hac tua interpellatione perdidimus."

135. On the other hand, after temporal conjunctions (*ubi*, *postquam*, *ut*, etc.) the Latin perfect (aorist) often represents an English past perfect.

*When they had arrived at the spot,
Caesar enumerated all the benefits
which the Senate had conferred on
him.*

*When he had compared what
Metellus said with what he did,
and had learnt that he was now
being hoist by his own petard,
Jugurtha made up his mind to
settle the quarrel by the sword.*

Ubi eo ventum est Caesar senatus
in eum beneficia commemoravit.

Iugurtha ubi Metelli dicta cum
factis composit ac se suis arti-
bus tentari animadvertit, statuit
armis certare.

136. The English continuous present perfect and past perfect (and in some cases the simple present perfect and past perfect) when signifying an act or state begun in the past and continuing in the present are rendered by the present and imperfect in Latin, usually with the adverbs *iam diu*, *iam dudum*, *iam pridem* (as in French, German, and Greek).

*I am desirous in fact, and I have
long been desirous, to visit Alex-
andria.*

Cupio quidem, et iam diu cupio,
Alexandriam visere.

*But why delay Antonius? For
Cotta and Sulpicius have been
waiting for him this long while.*

Sed cur impeditus Antonium,
quem iam dudum et Cotta et
Sulpicius exspectant?

*Seeing your very unbrotherly glances
at each other, I had long feared
this threatening storm.*

Iam pridem hanc procellam im-
minentem timebam, cum vultus
inter vos minime fratnos cer-
nerem.

*They have lived for 700 years and
more under a law that has never
changed.*

Septingentos iam annos amplius
numquam mutatis legibus vivunt.

*I have been lingering in the neigh-
bourhood of Baiae for the past
three weeks.*

Hos viginti dies ad Baias moror.

*It is now twenty years that every
scoundrel has been attacking me
alone.*

Vicesimus annus est cum omnes
scelesti me unum petunt.

This construction is also found in dependent clauses expressing time relations.

As happens to me whenever I have been reading or writing at my house at Laurentum.

Quod evenit mihi postquam in Laurentino meo aut lego aliquid aut scribo.

137. The Latin imperfect may convey the notions of "attempting," "wishing," "desiring," and of "beginning," but in an unemphatic way. If these notions are to be emphasised they must be expressed by means of the respective verbs *coepisse*, *incipere*, *occipere*, *niti*, *conari*, *velle*, etc.

New plans began to take shape in the mind of their leader.

Nova consilia apud ducem oriebantur.

138. In its use to express constant occurrence or habit "would" is a frequent English equivalent of the Latin imperfect.

In summer, if he had the time, he would lie in the sun reading a book. He would go on making notes and extracts; for he never read (perfect) a single thing without making such extracts.

Aestate, si quid otii, iacebat in sole, liber legebatur, adnotabat, excerptebatque; nihil enim legit quod non excerpteret.

139. *Odisse*, "hate," and *meminisse*, "remember," have no present stems. Therefore their perfect tenses have the force and take the syntax of presents; and similarly their pluperfects and futures-perfect respectively have the force and take the syntax of imperfects and of futures simple.

Similarly the forms *novi* (*noverim*) and *noveram* (*novissem*) are used with the force of present and imperfect. If a true perfect or pluperfect is required, it is supplied from the compound *cognoscere*, or more frequently from *intelligere*.

Coepisse, on the other hand, has its proper tense signification, the present being supplied by *incipere*.

140. **Sequence of tenses.** The rule for the sequence of tenses depends on the distinction between **primary** and **historic tenses** (see table). All present and future tenses of the English verb are primary, all past tenses historic.

141. The rule for the sequence of tenses is the same in English and Latin. It determines the tense of any dependent subjunctive clause in Latin, but it does not affect indicative clauses, nor any subjunctive which is not dependent.

This rule is simply that—

The verb in any clause which depends upon a principal verb in primary time must itself be primary; and the verb in any clause which depends upon a principal verb in historic time must itself be historic.

This is one of the most important rules in Latin syntax, and it extends to all dependent subjunctive clauses whatever.

142. Hence the following formulae.

A. PRIMARY SEQUENCE:

Dico : <i>I am saying, or say</i>	quid, what	" " "	faciam : <i>I am doing, or do, or am to do.</i>
Dicam : <i>let me say</i>			
Dixi : <i>I have said, or have been saying</i>			
Dicam : <i>I should say</i>			
Dixerim : <i>I should say, or should like to say</i>			fecerim : <i>I have done, or have been doing, or did, or was doing.</i>
Dicam : <i>I shall say, or shall be saying</i>			
Dixerim : <i>I shall have said, or shall have been saying</i>			
Cur dicturus sim : <i>why should I be likely to say</i>			facturus sim : <i>I shall or will do, or shall be doing, or am going to do.</i>

B. HISTORIC SEQUENCE:

Dicebam : <i>I was saying, or said, or used to say</i>	quid, what	" " "	facerem : <i>I was doing, or did, or was to do.</i>
Dicerem : <i>I should say, or should be saying</i>			
Dixi : <i>I said, or did say</i>			
Dixisse : <i>I should have said</i>			
Dixeram : <i>I had said, or had been saying</i>			fecisse : <i>I had done, or had been doing, or did.</i>
Cur dicturus essem : <i>why should I have been likely to say</i>			
			facturus essem : <i>I should or would do, or should be doing, or was going to do.</i>

143. In accordance with the double character of the Latin perfect *dixi*, note the difference of the sequence in the following.

I loved him dearly, and like a real friend, when we were at school together.

I have been very much at a loss to know whether age makes any difference.

Hunc ego, cum simul stude-
remus, arte familiariterque
dilexi.

Non mediocriter haesitavi, sitne
aliquod discrimen aetatum.

144. The historic present may take either primary or historic sequence indifferently.

He pointed out to Divitiacus how important it was to the government that the enemy's forces should be divided, so that there should be no need of engaging such a host all at once.

The Suessiones, dismayed at the rapid progress of the Romans, sent to Caesar to arrange for their submission, and on the petition of the Remi they secured their safety.

Divitiacum docet, quanto opere
rei publicae intersit manus hos-
tium distineri, ne cum tanta
multitudine uno tempore confli-
gendum sit.

Suessiones celeritate Romanorum
permoti legatos ad Caesarem de
deditione mittunt, et petentibus
Remis, ut conservarentur, im-
petrant.

145. Dependent questions. The rules for the sequence of tenses are best illustrated in dependent questions, which may therefore be studied in this context.

146. A dependent question of whatever kind must be expressed in the subjunctive mood, and in the tense corresponding to that in which the question would stand if put into the direct form, according to the rule of sequence of tenses, § 141.

Therefore, to determine correctly the Latin form of any indirect question, first determine the form of the same question if expressed directly. For examples see under Sequence of Tenses, § 141. Every interrogative word or particle which is permissible in a direct question is permissible also in a dependent question.

But *num* loses the peculiar force which belongs to it in direct questions and *necne* is preferred to *anon.*

147. The English “whether” (e.g. “ask whether,” “do you know whether ?”) and “if” (e.g. “I doubt if,” “I do not know if”), introducing single dependent questions, are translated by Latin *num* or *-ne* (never *si*), in dependent double questions by Latin *utrum* or its equivalents, according to § 384.

It is permissible to question whether anything has escaped us.

Let us ask then whether it was better for armed assassins to give way to Rome's liberties, or for our liberties to give way to your swords.

I had in mind also the difficulty whether, supposing anyone appealed to me, I was to interfere and come to his aid, or remain inactive and silent.

Licet dubitare num quid nos fugerit.

Quaeramus igitur utrum melius fuerit libertati populi Romani sceleratorum arma, an libertatem nostram armis tuis cedere.

Erat hic quoque aestus ante oculos, si quis forte me appellasset, intercederem et auxilium ferrem, an quiescerem sileremque.

148. An idiomatic use of an independent question is found in the phrases *haud scio an*, *nescio an*, *haud sciam an*, *nesciam an*, *dubito*, where the force conveyed is that of a qualified assertion of the writer's belief.

I rather fancy that there never could be a happier man.

I am inclined to think you have behaved meanly towards yourself. You certainly have towards me.

I should say no opinion could well be more comfortable than my own.

Haud scio an nemo beatior esse possit.

Invidisti, nescio an tibi, certe mihi.

Mea quidem sententia haud scio an nulla beatior possit esse.

149. A direct double question is converted to a dependent question simply by change of mood, the interrogatory particles remaining entirely unaltered, except that *necne* will usually take the place of *anon* (see § 385).

They raise the question whether it is an honourable or a shameful thing to do. Honestumne factu sit an turpe, dubitant.

The first problem in this enquiry is whether there are gods or not. Quaeritur primum in ea quaestione, sintne di necne sint.

In the second alternative *-ne* may take the place of *an*.
They were not quite sure in their own minds whether to approve or reprove the consul's bold march. Nec satis constabat animis, tam audax iter consulis laudarent vituperarentne.

PART III.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE AND ITS ELEMENTS.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE SIMPLE STATEMENT—THE SUBJECT.

150. The simplest form of grammatical speech, viz. the simple direct statement, has only two essential elements,—

- (a) the subject.
- (b) the predicate.

It is by qualifying, amplifying, or extending these two elements in various ways that the sentence becomes elaborated to its perfect form—the Period (Introd., p. 4).

151. The subject of a direct statement is (if expressed) in the nominative case.

i. The Latin verb in finite forms contains its subject within itself; *e.g.* “Thou speakest” is merely *dicis*, “we shall go” merely *ibimus*. Hence the personal pronoun which in English constantly represents the subject is commonly omitted in Latin and, when added at all, it will be either (a) to give emphasis or (b) to mark contrast, especially when there are several predication made of different subjects.

As an example of emphatic expression of the pronoun take—

Is it possible that you imagine that, because you have not been elected aedile, your honesty and energy and public spirit, your merits and your purity of life, your honour and your labour, are all frustrated and thrown away and dishonoured?

Tu continentiam, tu industriam, tu animum in rempublicam, tu virtutem, tu innocentiam, tu fidem, tu labores tuos, quod aedilis non sis factus, fractos esse et abiectos et repudiatos putas?

ii. As a general rule the Latin subject is not expressed in separate form when it may be omitted without detriment to the sense and lucidity of the passage. Therefore when a series of consecutive predication is made of the same subject, it will be expressed with the first predicate only; and conversely whenever a new subject of predication is introduced in thought, it must be likewise expressed in words.

152. The proper position of the subject if expressed is first in its sentence. Another word or phrase may precede it for the sake of emphasis or connexion, and then the subject usually follows at once; and wherever a lengthy period is in question, or a continuous series of predication concerning one subject, care should be taken to place that subject in a prominent position.

153. It is a trick of English style to avoid repeating the subject in the same form by substituting some equivalent expression. For example, in a brief passage descriptive of Wellington at Waterloo, the subject may be severally mentioned as (1) "Wellington," (2) "the Duke," (3) "the famous general," (4) "the English commander," and (5) "the victor of many a Peninsular fight." This is not permissible in Latin, which takes it for granted that

(a) unless a new subject is indicated, the subject does not change;

and conversely that

(b) where a new subject is indicated, that subject is different from the preceding subject.

Supposing therefore the five various English synonyms above mentioned were similarly rendered by five different

Latin expressions, the inference would be that they *represented five entirely different persons*.

The English use of synonyms is due to the relative paucity of determinative pronouns in the language, as compared with Latin; for where English can use only “he” or “him,” Latin has the choice of half a dozen or more alternatives (*is, ille, ipse, idem, se, qui*, etc.). Being only a makeshift, such synonyms are therefore generally speaking otiose (as *e.g.* where “Wellington” and “the Duke” are interchanged), or too vague to satisfy the strict logic of Latin (as *e.g.* where “the great general” is substituted. Which great general? Why Wellington rather than Bonaparte?). It is rarely that the synonym introduces a new idea (as *e.g.* when we say “the victor of many a Peninsular fight”), and in such cases the new idea must be reproduced in the Latin translation. But whereas the English has nothing to indicate to an ignorant reader that the Duke of Wellington and the man who won the Peninsular fights are one and the same, Latin will avoid such loose language by continuing to use the same subject, and adding the new idea in the shape of a relative adjectival clause or an apposition (§ 170). In fact the cardinal rule is that—

The Latin subject is never repeated except to avoid ambiguity.

154. Used as indefinite subjects of verbs of *thinking* and *saying*, the words “they,” “men,” “people” are not expressed in Latin.

Men call this spot the Accursed Way. *Hunc locum Viam Sceleratam dicunt.*

Second thoughts are best, as they say. *Posteriores cogitationes, ut aiunt, sapientiores solent esse.*

155. The indefinite “one” or “you” as the subject of a verb is often expressed in the second person singular of the subjunctive.

Where will one find a man who puts his friend’s honour before his own? *Ubi istum invenias qui honorem amici anteponat suo?*

156. i. An English gerund or infinitive, or an abstract noun equivalent to it, standing as the subject of a sentence may be rendered by the Latin infinitive, regarded as an indeclinable neuter substantive.

It is characteristic of men in general to make mistakes, but of none but a fool to persist in his mistake.

It behoves one to do right.

An instinctive eagerness to meet death is something which we share with many of our fellows.

Cuiusvis hominis est errare, nullius nisi insipientis in errore perseverare.

Oportet recte facere.

Impetu quodam et instinctu procurrere ad mortem commune est cum multis.

This use is almost confined to the present infinitive in prose.

ii. The infinitive thus used may have an object of its own, in Latin as in English.

It is a crime to put a Roman citizen in chains.

It is not worth your while to listen to each trial through which we have passed.

True friendship is to have the same likes and the same dislikes.

Facinus est vincire civem Romanum.

Non vobis operae est audire singula quae passi sumus.

Idem velle atque idem nolle, eadem firma amicitia est.

iii. The Latin infinitive may also have a subject in the accusative case.

The best course appeared to be the recall of the consul Valerius from Sicily.

That men should make mistakes is only human.

I have received word that the Parthians have crossed the Euphrates.

Nobody doubted that a war with (lit. from) the Tarquins was imminent.

Optimum visum est Valerium consulem ex Sicilia revocari.

Homines errare humanum est.

Mihi nuntiabatur Parthos transisse Euphratem.

Haud cuiquam in dubio erat, bellum ab Tarquinis imminentem.

157. i. The Latin infinitive may be thus used to render a few simple abstract expressions, e.g. "love," *amare*; "sin," *errare, peccare*; "education," *doceri*; "imprisonment," *vinciri*.

Death for one's country's sake is honourable. Honestum est pro patria mori.

A dispute began. Coepitum est disceptari.

Love, hunting, drinking—that is life. Amare, venari, bibere, hoc est vivere.

ii. In such expressions the infinitive may stand equally as an accusative, i.e. as the subject of another infinitive.

Defeat, refutation, or disproof he regards as disgraceful in the extreme. Vinci, refelli, coargui, putat esse turpissimum.

158. Normally in Latin only a living being may stand as the subject of an active verb; it may thus often be necessary to get rid of abstract English subjects, which in many cases will become in Latin the instrumental or causal ablative, the verb being changed into the passive.

The spear pierced his thigh. Femur tragula traicitur.
Famine was now bearing hard upon the besieged. Iam obsessi fame premebantur.

Ambition fired the youth. Iuvenis incendebatur gloria (abl.).
Hunger destroyed them. Fame mortui sunt.
Grief overcame him. Dolori succubuit.
Death awaited the Gauls. Galli morituri erant.

It is true that Livy is fond of abstract subjects, especially words which express the passions.

When the news arrived, such a panic seized on all . . . Quibus auditis tantus pavor omnes invasit . . .
The lack of free men and the necessities of the case produced another new kind of levy. Aliam formam novi delectus inopia liberorum capitum et necessitas dedit.

Such constructions should be imitated very cautiously.

159. In certain cases Latin uses an impersonal construction where English has a personal subject:

(a) In the passive of the verbs which in English govern the objective case, but in Latin the dative. See § 201.

(b) With the five impersonal verbs *miseret*, *paenitet*, *piget*, *pudet*, *taedet*, which represent in English "I am sorry," "I regret" or "repent," "I am weary," "I am ashamed," "I am disgusted."

Here the English subject becomes the object in Latin, and the object or objective prepositional phrases, which are used in English to express the cause of the emotion, are in Latin represented by the objective genitive.

As for myself, I sympathize with the very walls and roof.

Me quidem miseret parietum ipsorum atque tectorum.

You would of a surety be friends with me again if you knew the shame I feel for this villainy of yours, for which you yourself feel none.

Ne tu iam mecum in gratia redeas, si sci's quam me pudeat nequitiae tuae, cuius te ipsum non pudet.

If you felt no shame for the towns, did you feel none even for that army of veterans?

Si te municipiorum non pudebat, ne veterani quidem exercitus?

You don't imagine he would have regretted his years, even if he had lived to be a hundred?

Num igitur si ad centesimum annum vixisset, senectutis eum suae paeniteret?

(c) The English verb "I may" and the passive "I am allowed" is frequently rendered in Latin by the impersonal *licet* followed by the dative.

Themistocles was allowed to live in idleness.

Licuit Themistocli esse otioso.

Why should I say more of a man whose society I may not enjoy?

Quid ego plura de viro, quo mihi frui non licet?

(d) The English verbs "I should," "I ought to," expressing moral duty, are rendered by the Latin impersonals *oportet*, *debet*, and the negative *dederet*.

What reasons have you given why he should have been recalled?

Quam attulisti rationem cur eum restitu oporteret?

There was not a man but thought I ought to be let off. Nemo erat qui mihi non censeret parci oportere.

Antonius ought not to have been angered. Irritatum Antonium non oportuit.

One should gather Nature's portrait from all that is best in nature. Specimen naturae capi decet ex optima quaque natura.

Sometimes also by *est* followed by the predicative genitive.

A shrewd man should check the impulse to benevolence. Est prudentis sustinere impetum benevolentiae.

160. “I must,” “I have to,” “I should,” “I ought to,” when followed by the infinitive of a verb intransitive in Latin, can also be represented by the nominative of the gerund, the English subject becoming the dative of the agent.

Fabius must be on his guard against the enemy's wiles and ambuscades. Fabio a fraude hostili et ab insidiis cavendum est.

When these verbs are followed by the active infinitive of a transitive verb with an object, the English object becomes the Latin subject, with the gerundive in agreement with it, and the English subject the dative of the agent.

Either you ought not to have undertaken the case, or, having once undertaken it, you should have fought for it to the last. Aut non suscipienda fuit ista causa aut, cum suscepisses, defendenda usque ad extremum.

The gerundive is also used when “I must,” “I have to,” etc., are followed by the passive infinitive of a verb transitive in Latin.

He should be accounted indeed a man who, when confronted by slander and death or punishment, none the less energetically defends the State. Proposita invidia, morte, poena, qui nihilo segnium rem publicam defendit, is vir vere putandus est,

CHAPTER XIV.

THE ATTRIBUTE.

161. **Adjectives, participles, and adjectival pronouns agree with the substantive to which they refer in gender, number, and case.**

(i) The proper position for such attributive words is immediately before or after that to which they are attributed: and if the word to which they are attributed is omitted, they will stand in the position which such word would occupy if expressed. This rule may be varied for the sake of emphasis, antithesis, etc.

(ii) Such words as "man" or "men," "people," "person" or "persons," will frequently be omitted when qualified by an attributive, the latter then standing substantively in the required number and the masculine gender. Such words as "things," "objects" may similarly be omitted, the attributive being then used in the neuter plural. The corresponding feminine words, such as "woman" or "women," are less frequently omitted. The substantival uses of attributives in the neuter singular is comparatively rare, and almost confined to philosophical writing, e.g. *malum*, "sin," *honestum*, "the honourable," "honour," *iustum*, "what is just," "justice," "right."

162. Two adjectives or adjectival participles attributed to the same substantive must be coupled by a conjunction; and if there be more than two such attributes, then a conjunction must be used throughout or not at all.

Of its own weight the volume slipped from his hands, for he was old and was standing up. *Liber et seni et stanti ipso pondere elapsus est.*

His mind was lofty, exact, genial and amiable, and thoroughly versed in legal pleading. Erat ingenium excelsum, subtile, dulce, facile, eruditum in causis agendis.

This rule does not of course apply where one of the two adjectives or participles is used substantively.

163. In certain expressions of place and quantity, where English uses two nouns connected by the preposition *of* used partitively, Latin has an attributive adjective and substantive.

<i>On the end of the bridge.</i>	In extremo ponte.
<i>He encamped upon the crest of the hill.</i>	In summo iugo castra posuit. c.
<i>The majority of men think so.</i>	Plerique (h̄omines) ita putant.

The rule also applies where in English the first noun is an adjective used substantively.

Such expressions are: "all of," "the whole of," *totus, cunctus, omnis, universus*; "the rest of," *reliquis, ceteri, cetera*; "most of," *plerique, plurimi*; "few of," *pauci, perpauci, minimi*; "the top of," *summus*; "the middle of," *medius*; "the bottom of," *infinius, imus*; "the first of," *primus, princeps*; "the last of," *norissimus, supremus*.

164. English descriptive epithets which imply a judgment involving a predicate are never translated by attributive adjectives in Latin. When used with proper names by way of compliment or abuse, they are represented by a phrase with *vir* or *femina* in apposition to the name.

<i>The worthless Catiline.</i>	Catilina, vir nequissimus.
<i>The noble Brutus.</i>	Brutus, vir egregius.

If the predicative sense is strong and important to the general meaning of the passage, such epithets may require to be translated by a participial phrase or relative clause; or by an adverbial phrase or clause modifying the predicate.

<i>The implacable Cato killed himself.</i>	Cato, qui nullo modo conciliari poterat, mortem sibi consivit.
<i>The despairing garrison surrendered.</i>	Obsessi, omni spe abiecta, se dediderunt.

Many such epithets are purely otiose and need not be translated.

These preparations did not escape the ever-watchful Caesar.

Many also belong to descriptive periphrases used in English to avoid the repetition of a name (see § 16).

165. The following are the chief kinds of attributive words or phrases which may in English be used to qualify a substantive:—

- (i) The possessive case and the prepositional phrases made up of a substantive and the preposition *of*, corresponding to the ordinary meaning of the subjective, objective, and partitive genitives in Latin, or to a word used appositionally.
- (ii) Prepositional phrases made up of a substantive and the preposition *of* or *with* used to express quality.
- (iii) Prepositional phrases expressing other relations.
- (iv) Substantives in apposition.

166. (i) Prepositional phrases having the ordinary meaning of the possessive, subjective, objective, and partitive genitives in Latin are translated by those genitives, with the following exceptions:—

(a) The preposition *of* used with a proper name of place as equivalent to the genitive of the possessor is translated in Latin by an adjective.

<i>A man of Arpinum, of Syracuse, of Athens.</i>	Arpinas, Syracusanus, Atheniensis.
<i>The spolia of Pometia.</i>	Manubiae Pometinae.
<i>The government of Gabii.</i>	Gabina res.
<i>The empire of Rome.</i>	Imperium Romanum.
<i>The defeat of Cannae.</i>	C'ades Cannensis.
<i>The breaker of the alliance between Rome and Alba.</i>	Foederis Romani Albanique ruptor.
<i>The forces of Veii and Crustumeria.</i>	Veientes Crustumeriaeque copiae.

And similar adjectives may be formed from any Roman gentile name.

The murders of (i.e. committed by) *Clodiana caedes.*
Clodius.

The agitations of Sempronius. *Semproniana seditio.*

(b) In Latin, as in French, in speaking of parts of the body, the English possessive case or its equivalent is translated by the dative.

At that instant both Balventius' thighs were pierced by a lance. *Tum Balventio utrumque femur tragula traicitur.*

(c) In expressions such as "the town of Rome," "the name of Julius," the English prepositional phrase is represented by a Latin noun in apposition.

He stormed the town of Apiolae. *Oppidum Apiolas vi cepit.*
To him had fallen the province of Sicily. *Huic provincia Sicilia obvenerat.*

167. (ii) Prepositional phrases made up of a single substantive and the preposition "with" or "of," expressing quality, are translated by an attributive adjective in Latin.

A man of courage. *Vir fortis.*
A girl with brains. *Puella non stulta.*

But where the substantive is qualified by an epithet, the genitive of quality or the descriptive ablative may be used, or a participle with an ablative of respect.

Ardea was occupied by the Rutuli, a people of surpassing wealth. *Ardeam Rutuli habebant, gens divitiae praepollens.*

L. Junius Brutus, son of the king's sister Tarquinia, and a youth of very different intellect, was given him as a companion. *Comes iis additus L. Junius Brutus, Tarquinia sorore regis natus, iuvenis longe alius ingenio.*

You with that throat of yours, you with all that strength of wind, you with your prize-fighting robustness of physique, had swallowed so much wine, that.... *Tu istis fauibus, istis lateribus, ista gladiatoria totius corporis firmitate, tantum vini exhauseras, ut....*

Torquatus, a man of the old stern type. *Torquatus, vir priscae severitatis.*

168. Where the English prepositional phrase expresses matter, e.g. "a bridge of wood," or origin, e.g. "words from an old source," if the substantive has no epithet the prepositional phrase must be represented by an adjective, or a participle must be inserted, e.g. *ligneus pons* or *pons e materia factus*; when there is an epithet the phrase may directly qualify a noun, e.g. *e vetere fonte verba*, although the more ordinary Latin would be *verba e vetere fonte derivata*.

169. (iii) Prepositional phrases which express relations of time and place cannot in Latin qualify substantives; they must be rendered by adjectives or adjectival clauses, or constructed with participles.

<i>The men of those days.</i>	<i>Homines qui tum vivebant.</i>
<i>The camp at Veii.</i>	<i>Castra ante Veios posita.</i>
<i>The war in Asia.</i>	<i>Bellum Asiaticum.</i>
<i>A man from Arpinum.</i>	<i>Arpinas.</i>
<i>All the men in the ship.</i>	<i>Omnis qui in nave erant.</i>

In some cases, however, a prepositional phrase can be inserted between a substantive and an epithet in agreement, since when thus bracketed the phrase could not be taken to modify the predicate.

<i>The attention of all kings and races was fixed on this struggle between the two richest states in the world.</i>	<i>In hanc dimicacionem duorum opulentissimorum in terris populorum omnes reges gentesque animos intenderunt.</i>
---	---

170. (iv) One substantive may be attributed to another, and is then said to be "in apposition," or "appositive." In Latin the apposed substantive must agree in case with that to which it refers. The gender and number of the appositive are of course its own properties, and are therefore independent of any other substantive.

Gaius Marcius Rutilus, the other consul, stormed Allifae. Consul alter: C. Marcius Rutilus, Allifas v̄f̄ cepit.

The town was surrendered to the dictator Postumius Postumio dictatore urbs dedita est.

171. Some nouns, especially those implying personal action, have two forms, a masculine and a feminine. When such nouns are used in apposition, they agree in gender also (though not necessarily in number) with the noun to which they are apposed.

Athens, the teacher of arts.

Athenae, magistra artium.

Hope, that helps all men.

Spes, omnium adiutrix.

CHAPTER XV.

THE PREDICATE.

172. Whatever is asserted of the subject is the predicate.

173. A predicate is direct when its subject is in the nominative case, *i.e.* in any simple sentence. It is oblique when the subject is not in the nominative, *e.g.* in accusative and infinitive construction or in the ablative absolute.

174. A predicate is primary when it admits of complete expression in the shape of a single verb-form. In all other cases it is secondary.

175. In every direct predication, whether primary or secondary, the predicate must agree with the nominative subject, whether expressed or understood, in number, person, and if possible in gender.

176. The rule as to the agreement of gender applies only to secondary predication, there being nothing to indicate gender in the simple verb-form.

177. But the use of a plural verb with the distributive *quisque* added appositively in the singular is a valuable idiom.

Everyone grumbled at the king's iniquities and violence. Pro se quisque scelus regium ac vim queruntur.

178. The same predication may be made of any number of subjects (*i.e.* there may be a composite subject), and these subjects may differ in person, number, and gender.

The predicate to a composite subject should be associated either with the first or with the last member of the subject, and usually with the last.

179. When the various members of a composite subject are *disjunctively connected*, the predicate will agree with the nearest.

There is no wisdom, no judgment, no discrimination, no intelligence in a mob.

He was not defeated any more than was I.

This is not the first time that either Brutus or Cassius has decided that his country's safety is the highest of all laws.

Non est consilium in vulgo, non ratio, non discrimen, non intelligentia.

Non hic magis quam ego vincebar.

Nec enim nunc primum aut Brutus aut Cassius salutem patriae legem sanctissimam iudicavit.

180. But in every other case (*i.e.* in every case where the various members of the composite subject are *conjunctively connected*), then—

181. i. In number the predicate may be either (*a*) plural, or (*b*) in agreement with the nearest subject, whether singular or plural.

Panic and flight had seized upon their minds.

Cassius, Maelius, and Manlius were put to death because they were suspected of aiming at the throne.

He had talent, sense, and memory; he was literary, careful, thoughtful, and industrious.

When wealth had come to be accounted honourable, and glory and office and influence to depend thereon, merit came to lose its lustre, poverty to be regarded as a reproach, and purity as mere malice.

Pavor fugaque occupaverant animos.

Cassius, Maelius, Manlius, propter suspicionem regni appetendi sunt necati.

Fuit in illo ingenium, ratio, memoria, litterae, cura, cogitatio, diligentia.

Postquam divitiae honori esse coepere, et eas gloria, imperium, potentia sequebatur, hebescere virtus, paupertas probro haberit, innocentia pro malevolentia duci coepit.

182. Wherever the various members of the composite subject are regarded as constituting one idea, the predicate will be in the singular.

Let religion and honour rank before friendship. Religio et fides anteponatur amicitiae.

183. ii. In person the predicate will be of the highest person represented among the various subjects, the 1st person ranking higher than the 2nd, and the 2nd than the 3rd.

We were governors of neighbouring provinces, Bibulus and I. - Fuimus imperatores ego et Bibulus in propinquis provinciis.

If you and your troops are in good health, it is well. Si tu exercitusque valetis bene est.

We are too old, you and I. Seniores sumus et ego et tu.

Observe that, as in the examples here given, the Latin idiom, reversing the English order, requires the subjects, if of different persons, to be arranged in order of priority, viz. 1st, 2nd, and 3rd.

184. iii. In gender, (a) if the predicate be made to agree in number with the nearest subject, it must agree in gender also.

Collatia, and all the land about the town, were confiscated. Collatia, et quicquid circa Collatiam agri erat, ademptum.

(b) Otherwise, if the subjects be all of one gender, the predicative adjective or participle will be likewise of that gender; and if the subjects be not all of one gender, then the predicative adjective or participle will be (i) masculine, if the various subjects denote only persons, or (ii) otherwise neuter.

Titus and Arruns started. Titus et Arruns profecti (sunt).

Wealth and honour and fame are set before our eyes. Divitiae decus gloria in oculis sita sunt.

185. Owing to dislike of needless repetition, the same predicate or part of a predicate is never repeated, or only for the sake of great emphasis. Observe the following:—

It is not I am the fool, but yourself. Non ego sum stultus, sed tu (es stultus).

Both you and yours are lucky. Et tu felix es et tui (felices sunt).
It is not that you are shrewd, but that he is a dolt. Non tu es sapiens, sed ille stultus (est).

186. The historic infinitive. In descriptions of events or states which follow one another in rapid sequence, especially where the subject of a number of predication is the same, the infinitive mood may be used idiomatically as a predicate in place of a finite verb.

This usage is, however, confined to (a) the present tense, (b) the first and third persons, and generally to (c) principal clauses in the shape of direct statements only.

The fellow faltered, fidgeted, and turned crimson. Haerere homo, versari, rubere.

Then at last Titurius—for he had foreseen nothing—was panic-stricken. He hurried about and organised his companies indeed, but even this he did timorously, and in such fashion that he was clearly quite at a loss.

The Gauls too at first stood rooted to the spot with awe, as though unable to understand what had occurred. Then they began to suspect an ambuscade. Finally they betook themselves to gathering up the spoils, and piling up heaps of armour, as their manner is.

Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare, cohortesque disponere, haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur.

Ipsi Galli pavore defixi primum steterunt velut ignari quid accidisset; deinde insidias vereri, postremo caesorum spolia legere, armorumque cumulos, ut mos eis est, coacervare.

187. With the substantive verb (*esse*), and the copulatives *ducor* and *habeo* (in the sense of “to be considered,” “to be regarded”), certain substantives are regularly con-

structed as complements in the dative case (dative of the predicate).

This use is common within certain strict limits. The substantives most frequently thus used are—

- (i) *argumentum*, proof.
auxilium, assistance, aid, relief.
bonum, advantage.
cura, care, charge.
detrimentum, disadvantage, loss.
documentum, proof, evidence, warning.
donum, gift.
exemplum, example.
fraus, damage, harm.
impedimentum, obstacle, hindrance.
ludibrium, jest, sport.
odium, hatred.
onus, burden, nuisance.
praesidium, protection, guard.
usus, service, utility.

(ii) A number of fourth declension substantives in *-tus*, e.g. *ostentus*, display; *victus*, sustenance; *vestitus*, clothing.

(iii) *Ludibrium*, laughing-stock; *risus*, scoff; *bonum*, a good thing; *malum*, a misfortune.

(iv) *Cordi*, to one's liking.

Whatever is requisite for fitting out a fleet, he ordered to be brought up from Spain.

The more you associate with me, the more you will realise that the thing means rank and reward to you.

Insults done to heaven are heaven's own concern.

The leisure and wealth, which elsewhere are something to pray for, were to them only a nuisance or annoyance.

Ea quae sunt usui ad armandas naves ex Hispania apportari iussit.

Quo frequentior mecum fueris, senties eam rem tibi dignitati atque emolumento esse.

Deorum iniuriae dis curae.

His otium divitiae, optanda alias, oneri miseriaeque fuere.

I was born to be a proof of Jugurtha's barbarities. Eo natus sum ut Iugurthae scelerum ostentui essem.

And this is all the more to my taste. Quod etsi mihi magis est cordi.

Frugi (dative of *frua*), which is used as a simple adjective (= *frugalis*, “careful” or “profitable”), was perhaps originally a similar dative.

188. The complementary substantive in a secondary predication may occasionally be constructed in (a) the genitive or (b) the ablative, with a qualifying attribute in either usage. This is not common.

The entire island is 2000 miles in circumference.

Omnis insula est in circuitu viciens centenū milium passuum.

If a man is of so bitter and soulless a nature as to avoid and hate the society of man . . .

Si quis asperitate ea est et immanitate naturae, congressus ut hominum fugiat et oderit . . .

A city which is so old that it is said to have been itself the parent of its citizens.

Urbs quae ea vetustate est, ut ipsa ex se suos cives genuisse dicatur.

These are merely genitives of quality and ablatives of description treated as predicates.

189. A possessive genitive is very commonly used to form the predicate (*predicative genitive*) where in English we use such phrases as “it is the nature of,” “it is characteristic of,” “it is like,” “it is the duty, business, province of.”

I am rather of their opinion.

Eorum magis sententiae sum.

The gods, in whose keeping that region was.

Di, quorum tutelae ea loca erant.

To deceive others by falsehoods is the characteristic of a knave.

Improbi hominis est mendacio fallere.

To adopt or abandon a design according to the dictates of reason is the mark of a great soul.

Ut suaserit ratio, consilium vel suscipere vel ponere ingentis est animi.

They informed him that the matter was not within their choice.

Docent sui iudicii rem non esse.

To draw the mind away from the senses, and to separate one's thoughts from customary things, marks a lofty intellect.

Unless you call them in again, they will some day, like runaway, find some persons to claim them.

Magni est ingenii revocare mentem a sensibus, et cogitationem a consuetudine abducere.

Hos nisi retrahes, quandoque ut errores aliquem cuius dicantur invenient.

CHAPTER XVI.

THE OBJECT.

190. The chief differences between the English and the Latin idiom with regard to the direct object are of two kinds:—

- i. Many verbs in English govern a direct object while their Latin equivalents govern some case other than the accusative.
- ii. Transitive verbs which can only be used with a direct object are commoner in Latin than in English.

191. i. Many verbs which in English govern the objective case are in Latin rendered by verbs which govern the dative of the indirect object. The chief of these are verbs signifying to *please, obey, command, persuade, spare, help, believe, pardon, favour*.

He could not, in leaving his province, have satisfied the people, had he put any one else in charge of it.

Is this the man I am to submit to and obey?

We will govern those appetites to which the rest of the world are slaves.

These men he believed to have supported Servius' government.

My conduct as consul does not satisfy Antonius? Yet it satisfied Servilius and Catulus and the two Luculli.

Decedens provincia satis facere hominibus non posset, si quemquam alium provinciae praefecisset.

Illi obtemperem et paream?

Cupiditatibus iis, quibus ceteri servient, imperabimus.

Hos Servi rebus favisse credebat.

Non placet Antonio consulatus meus? At placuit Servilio, placuit Catulo, placuit duobus Lucullis.

The third legion rec'd to support the first, and the cavalry on the right were supported by those on the left.

His enemy Vorenus came to his aid and supported him when he was in difficulties; and being in his turn surrounded he was rescued by Pulio.

Primae legioni tertia, dextrae
alae sinistra subiit.

Succurrit illi Vorenus inimicus,
et laboranti subvenit. Huic
rursus circumvento fert subsi-
dium Pulio.

192. Where an English verb admits both of a direct and indirect object, both, especially if the indirect object be a personal pronoun, are often put in the objective case. This usage is due to the partial survival of an English dative. The indirect object in Latin is always in the dative.

*Pompeius grudged Caesar his safety.
He gave Python the gold.*

Pompeius salutem Caesari invidit.
Aurum Pythiae dedit.

193. The deponent verbs *fingor*, "I perform," *fruor*, "I enjoy," *utor*, "I use," *rescor*, "I eat," are followed by ablatives of the instrument or matter.

*So the man who would be happy
must use great fortune and enjoy it.
How long will you abuse our en-
durance?*

Utatur suis bonis oportet et frua-
tur, qui beatus futurus est.
Quousque tandem abutere patien-
tia nostra?

194. A few verbs signifying to pity, remember, or forget are constructed in Latin with the objective genitive

Have pity on our allies!

Miseremini sociorum!

*The gods (he said), in pity for
Rome, have been merciful to her
guiltless armies.*

Deos, miseritos nominis Romani,
pepercisse innoxii exercitibus.

*I remember well that night, and I
shall never forget it.*

Memini, neque umquam obliviscar
noctis illius!

*Pray heaven you forget them as
easily as I do!*

Utinam tam facile vos oblivious-
mini eorum, quam ego oblivious-
car!

They remembered the 1st January. Reminiscebantur Kalendarum Ianuariarum.

But *miseror* and *commiseror* invariably govern the accusative; and verbs of remembering, when used with a personal object, or used of sudden recollection, are also followed by that case.

I recollect Cinna, and Sulla I actually saw. Cinnam memini, vidi Sullam.

Call to mind the day whereon you did away with the dictatorship. Recordare illum diem, quo dictaturam sustulisti.

195. A few English transitive verbs of motion are rendered by Latin verbs requiring special constructions: "I reach" is *pervenio* followed by *ad* with the accusative; "I leave" when used of places is represented by *abeo* followed by *e* or *a*, or *discedo* followed by the ablative of separation; and "I enter" is *ineo* followed by *in* with the accusative, although *intro*, which is transitive, can also be used.

196. The English verb "I have" when used independently as a transitive verb is not as a rule translated by the Latin *habeo*, which represents rather "I hold" or "I have in my possession." The Latin equivalent for "I have a dog" is *est mili canis*, *mili* being the possessive dative.

Each community has its own belief, Sua cuique civitati religio est,
Laelius, and we have ours. Laeli, nostra nobis.

197. ii. Some English verbs which can be used transitively and intransitively have a special Latin verb to represent each use, *e.g.* "I burn," (trans.) *uro*, (intrans.) *ardeo*; "I increase," (trans.) *augeo*, (intrans.) *cresco*. *Uro* and *augeo* require direct objects and are never intransitive. Very often a verb which can be both transitive and intransitive in English is, when transitive, rendered by the active voice of a Latin verb, when intransitive by the passive or a deponent form; *e.g.*

	Transitive.	Intransitive.
<i>I move</i>	moveo	moveor.
<i>I h^uge</i>	muto	mutor.
<i>I roll</i>	volvo	volvor.
<i>I turn</i>	verto	vertor (<i>in perf. tenses</i> verti, etc.)

198. Verbs of asking in Latin are followed by two accusatives, one (*external*) of the person, one (*internal*) of the thing.

I was the first person whom the Tribune asked for an opinion. Tribunus me primum sententiam rogavit.

This is what I earnestly, very earnestly, ask of you. Hoc te vehementer etiam atque etiam rogo.

Meantime Caesar kept on day impounding the Aedui for the grain which they had promised him. Interim Caesar cotidie Aeduos frumentum, quol essent polliciti, flagitare.

Similarly *celo* in Latin has two objects, whereas its English equivalents, "I hide" or "I keep in ignorance," etc., have only one.

I have not concealed from you my conversation with Titus Ampius. Non te celavi sermonem T. Ampii.

199. The Latin verbs *traduco*, *traicio*, and *transmitto*, which govern two accusatives, are used to translate a simple English verb with a preposition—"I lead across," "I throw across," "I send across"; and these verbs when passive retain one accusative.

He made haste to lead his army across the river Arnon. Flumen Axonam exercitum traducere maturavit.

Either on the strength of our late victory, or by the mere fame of Rome, we can make them afraid to lead any larger force of Germans over the Rhine. Vel recenti victoria vel nomine populi Romani detergere possumus, ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur.

200. The passive voice. Strictly speaking, both in English and Latin only transitive verbs can be used passively, but each language has different exceptions to the rule.

i. Some English verbs which are followed by a preposition and a substantive can be turned into the passive, the substantive becoming the subject, while the preposition remains attached to the verb; e.g. "he cares for you" is in the passive form "you are cared for by him." Similar phrases are "I am laughed at," "I am waited for" or "looked for," "I was listened to." Such phrases can only be rendered by the Latin passive in the case of transitive verbs.

ii. Latin, on the other hand, uses intransitive verbs impersonally in the passive; e.g. *pugnatum est*, which can only be translated in English "the battle was fought" or "there was fighting."

201. Verbs which govern the objective case in English but the dative in Latin are in Latin regarded as intransitive, and consequently the English passive can only be translated by impersonal forms in Latin, the dative remaining unchanged.

The present tense passive of the Latin verb *parere*, "to obey," is therefore—

<i>Sing.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. I \text{ am} \\ 2. Thou \text{ art} \\ 3. He \text{ is} \\ 1. We \text{ are} \\ 2. Ye \text{ are} \\ 3. They \text{ are} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>obeyed.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. Mihi \\ 2. Tibi \\ 3. Illi, ei \\ 1. Nobis \\ 2. Vobis \\ 3. Illis, eis \end{array} \right\}$	<i>paretur.</i>
--------------	---	----------------	--------------	--	-----------------

And similarly with all other finite tenses—

<i>Imperf. Ind.</i>	<i>I was being envied.</i>	<i>Invidebatur mihi.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Thou hast been persuaded.</i>	<i>Persuasum est tibi.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>He had been ordered.</i>	<i>Imperatum erat illi.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>We shall be pardoned.</i>	<i>Ignoscetur nobis.</i>
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>May ye be assisted!</i>	<i>Subveniatur vobis!</i>
<i>Imperf. Subj.</i>	<i>They would be believed.</i>	<i>Fideretur illis.</i>

and in the infinitive mood—

Present. *Do you fancy that he is being injured?* *Num putatis huic noceri?*

Perfect. *I hope we are all convinced on that point.* *Spero omnibus nobis de ista re persuasum esse.*

CHAPTER XVII.

ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF THE PREDICATE.

202. In a simple sentence in English the predicate may be modified or extended either by an adverb or an adverbial phrase containing a substantive and a preposition.

203. It is to be noticed that Latin in many cases uses **predicative adjectives**, or substantives in apposition to the subject, where English has adverbs or adverbial phrases. "I came first" is *primus reni*; "Caesar learnt this when a boy," *Caesar puer hoc didicit*. Such idioms are common where the English adverb expresses a state of mind.

I have taken this course unwillingly. *Quod invitus feci.*

He retorted angrily that . . . *Ilie iratus respondit . . .*

The consul in alarm sought to avoid a battle. *Consul territus proelium detrectari.*

204. Many English adverbial phrases involving the prepositions *by*, *with*, *from*, *of*, *in*, correspond to uses of the Latin ablative. Thus phrases with *by* may correspond to the ablatives of the agent, instrument, cause, manner, measure: a prepositional phrase including *with* to the ablatives of the instrument, cause, manner, and attendant circumstance; and conversely the Latin ablative of cause may be translated by a prepositional phrase involving *by*, *with*, *from*, *of*; e.g. in English we should say "he died of hunger" or "from hunger," but "he perished by hunger" and "he was perishing with hunger." If, therefore, such a phrase has to be turned into Latin, it is useless to pay attention to the English preposition.

205. A prepositional phrase (usually with "in") limiting the application of the verb or predicate is rendered by the Latin **ablative of respect**.

He was lame in the feet.

(So *Captus oculis*, "blind"; *captus auribus*, "deaf," etc.)

Pompeius meant no man to be put on a level with himself in point of rank.

The Romans, their equals in courage, but inferior in numbers and in strategy, hurriedly marched out their forces and engaged.

In point of cavalry this tribe is by far the strongest in the whole of Gaul.

Captus erat pedibus.

Nominem secum dignitate exaequari Pompeius volebat.

Par audacia Romanus, consilio et viribus impar, copiis raptim eductis conflixit.

Haec r civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet.

A particular instance of the use of the ablative of respect is the ablative supine, which occurs in a few verbs of seeing and hearing: it is rendered by the English gerundial infinitive used limitatively.

Wonderful to relate.

Mirabile dictu.

206. The person by whom an action is performed, represented in English by a noun and the preposition "by," is as a rule translated in Latin by the **ablative of the agent** with the preposition *a* or *ab*.

He was hailed king by his people.

Rex ab suis appellatur.

The wanderers were overtaken by the consul near Tibur.

Palati a consule haud procul Tibure excepti.

He was not defeated by his rivals any more than I was by mine.

Non hic magis quam ego a meis competitoribus vincebar.

Have a care that your grumbling and excessive soreness be not reprimanded by these sensible gentlemen.

Cave ne tua ista querella dolorque nimius ab illis sapientissimis viris reprehendatur.

The preposition *per* is often used instead of *a* or *ab*, denoting not so much by whose act as *through whose agency* a result is obtained.

The quarrel was stopped through the efforts of the sergeants. Certamen per centuriones direp-
tum est.

207. But in certain constructions, instead of the ablative of the agent with *a* or *ab*, the dative of the agent is used—

i. With gerunds and gerundives:

He campaigned under the command of Hasdrubal, omitting nothing of what ought to be seen and done by one destined to be himself a great leader.

If you prefer to consider it as a verdict, you can't undo it; you must endure it.

All men have to die.

Caesar decided that he must not wait.

He considered that he must split up his army and scatter it over a wider area.

Sub Hasdrubale imperatore
mernit, nulla re, quae agenda
videndaque magno futuro duci
esset, praetermissa.

Sin hoc mavis esse iudicium, non
tibi id rescindendum est, sed
ferendum.

Moriendum est omnibus.

Caesar non exspectandum sibi
statuit.

Partiendum sibi ac latius distri-
buendum exercitum putavit.

ii. Sometimes with perfect participles passive, and with such compound tenses of the passive verb as are formed therewith.

He escaped from those emperors by whom he had been looked upon with suspicion and even hatred.

Principes, quibus suspectus atque
etiam invisus fuerat, evasit.

208. The thing with which, or by means of which, an action is performed stands in English with the prepositions *by* and *with*, and in Latin is represented by the ablative of the instrument.

He fell pierced by a bolt.

Scorpione traiectus occubuit.

He selected for his camp a spot that was protected by swamps and forests.

Locum castris deligit paludibus
silvisque munitum.

He commenced to reconstruct the bridge with the original timbers.

Isdem sublatis pontem reficere coepit.

The nearest ditch they bridged with hurdles or filled up with soil.

Proximam fossam cratibus integunt atque aggere complent.

They beat back the Gauls with slings, pikes, and shot.

Fundis, sudibus, glandibus Gallos proterrent.

If the men had not been worn out with constant relief-work and a whole day's labour, the enemy's entire force might have been annihilated.

Nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent.

209. A noun which expresses the cause of an action or state is constructed in English with the prepositions *by*, *with*, *from*, *of*, and is represented in Latin by the simple ablative of cause.

By this time, thanks to the merits of Gnaeus Pompeius, affairs in the city had come to a more satisfactory state.

Iam res urbanae virtute Cn. Pompei commodorem in statum per venerant.

They further said that Caesar was detained by troubles in the city.

Addunt retineri urbano motu Caesarem.

Prompted by this opportunity . . .

Hac impulsu occasione . . .

Thanks to his hiding-place and the forests, or else to the woodlands, he always got away.

Semper ille latebris ac silvis aut saltibus se eripuit.

I name him out of compliment.

Illum quidem honoris causa dico.

210. The price *for* which a thing is bought in Latin is given by the ablative of price.

The government, they complained, had enticed away all their slaves, by buying them up at a small figure for military service.

Querebantur, servos rempublicam abduxisse ad militiam parvo aere emendo.

Falcidius had bought an estate for 900,000 sestertes.

Falcidius praedium HS. novies emerat.

211. But the value *at* which a thing is appraised is expressed more usually by the genitive of value.

*When I made him a present of it, Erat agellum, cum donarem,
the farm was worth 100,000 centum milium nummum.
sesterces.*

The following genitives (or locatives) of value may be used to represent various phrases in English: *magni, permagni, parvi, maximi, minimi, plurimi, tanti, quanti, maioris, minoris, pluris.*

His influence was rated very highly in that neighbourhood. *Eius auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur.*

We make small account of what you mention, he replied. *Haud magni ista facimus, inquit.*

212. In prepositional phrases involving *by* and expressing measure, the degree of difference between two objects so compared is expressed by the ablative.

The sun is (by) many times larger than is the moon. *Sol multis partibus maior est quam luna.*

They had assembled thither a few days earlier. *Eo paucis ante diebus convenient.*

It is said that there fell in the fight one more of the Etruscans (than of the Romans). *Uno plus Etruscorum in acie cecidisse ferunt.*

213. The circumstances which accompany an action in English and are expressed by substantives combined with the preposition *with* or *to* may in Latin be expressed by the ablative of accompaniment, usually with an epithet.

The chief command was conferred upon him with everyone's approval. *Omnium consensu ad eum imperium defertur.*

They asserted the freedom of Gaul even at the peril of their own lives. *Sui capitatis periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicant.*

He led back his army to Durocortorum with the loss of two companies. *Exercitum duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum reducit.*

214. English adverbs and adverbial phrases of manner are often translated by the Latin ablative of manner, which unless qualified by an epithet must be constructed with the preposition *cum*.

Let how shamefacedly, how nervously he said his say, and how white he was!

Let them face the enemy's charge with good courage.

They tearfully begged Caesar's aid.

Tamen id, quod dixit, quanto cum pudore, quo tremore et pallore dixit!

Hostium impetum magno animo sustineant.

Magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petebant.

215. The following Latin ablatives of manner are used without the preposition *cum*, being practically adverbs: *natura*, "naturally"; *vi*, "forcibly"; *fraude* and *dolo*, "treacherously," "wrongfully"; *iure*, "rightfully"; *in iuria*, "wrongfully"; *sponte*, "voluntarily"; *silentio*, "silently."

Here may be mentioned the use of such adverbial ablatives as—

bipertito, tripertito, in two (three) divisions.

auspicato, inauspicato, with (without) good omens.

litato, with favourable omens.

opinato, nec opinato, expectedly, unexpectedly.

consulto, on purpose.

They formed for battle without omens or auspices in their favour. Nec auspicato nec litato instruunt omes aciem.

216. Appended is a list of noticeable prepositional idioms, which for convenience are classified under the Latin prepositions. Idioms involving the adverbial use of the same words are added.

217. A, Ab.

i. *From boyhood, from youth.* A puero, ab adulescentulo.

ii. *Near the river.* Prope a flumine.

iii. *Well off in point of friends.* Dives ab amicis.
It is said that Antonius took the lead in respect of cavalry. Antonius ab equitatu primus fuisse dicitur.

iv. *Steward.* Libertus a rationibus.
Librarian. Libertus a libris.

218. Ad.

i. *Upwards of 200 were slain.* Ad ducenti caesi sunt (or Ad ducentos caesi sunt.).

ii. *In fine.* Ad summam.
Ultimately. Ad ultimum.

iii. *Is there any beast more huge of bulk than the elephant?* Elephanto ad figuram quae belua vastior?

iv. *Hereupon.* Ad hoc.

v. *Gilding-slaves.* Servi ad renos.
Wine-servers. Servi ad cyathos.

vi. *He left standing a few tents just to make a show.* Panca ad speciem tabernacula reliquit.

vii. *Word for word.* Ad verbum.

viii. *Inaccurately.* Ad amissim.

ix. *In the nick of time, opportunely.* Ad tempus.

x. *Nothing to the point.* Nihil ad rem.
What has that to do with me? Quid hoc ad me?

219. Ante.

i. *Beyond all others the finest.* Ante alios pulcherrimus.

ii. *Above all.* Ante omnia.

iii. *As I said above.* Quod ante dixi.

220. Apud.

i. *You shall dine with me.* Apud me cenabis.
At Crassus' house. Apud Crassum.

ii. *I find it stated in Xenophon.* Apud Xenophontem invenio scriptum.

221. Circa.

Grain collected from the surrounding country all about. Frumento undique circa ex agris convectis.

222. Circiter.

He made the journey in about a fortnight. Diebus circiter quindecim per venit.

223. Circum.

The position was ringed about by desolate uplands. Vastis circum saltibus locus claudebatur.

224. Contra.

- i. *The army was posted opposite. But it turned out just the reverse.* Stabat contra acies.
Quod contra evenit.
- Contrary to what was right. Otherwise than he should have done.* Contra ac iustum fuit.
Contra quam facere oportebat.
- ii. *Hatred of one's masters.* (of unfriendly emotions) Contra dominos odium.

225. Coram.

They should rather have said so openly in my presence. Coram potius me praesente dixissent.

226. Clam.

To mutter beneath one's breath. Clam mussitare.

227. Cum.

Suffixed to all personal pronouns (meum, robiscum), to the reflexive (secum), and to the relative qui (quocum, quacum, quibuscum). For quocum is found quicum, and for quibuscum often cum quibus.

Can anything be more gratifying than to have someone with whom you can venture to discuss any subject whatever, exactly as (you do) with yourself? Quid dulcius quam habere quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?

228. De.

i. <i>I heard it from you.</i>	Audivi de te.
ii. <i>It is all over with me.</i>	At tum est de me.
iii. <i>From a rhetorician you shall develop into a consul.</i>	Fies de rhetore consul.
iv. <i>Out of his own pocket.</i>	De suo.
<i>At the public cost.</i>	De publico.
v. <i>At midnight.</i>	De media nocte.

229. Erga

Of emotions *only*, and usually friendly emotions :
Lasting loyalty towards Rome. Perpetua erga populum Romanum fides.

230. Ergo.

In Livy, with genitive
By his own countenance. Honoris ergo

231. E. Ex.

i. <i>According to my judgment.</i>	Ex sententia mea.
<i>In accordance with the Senate's decree.</i>	Ex senatus consulto.
ii. <i>From the hill high from a great distance.</i>	E conviva Corybanta videbis.
iii. <i>Immediately after the march.</i>	Ex itinere.
<i>After his consulship.</i>	Ex consulatu.
iv. <i>On the heels of.</i>	Ex vestigio.
<i>Off hand.</i>	Ex tempore.
v. <i>Opposite to the bridge.</i>	E regione pontis.
vi. <i>Heirs to the whole estate.</i>	Heres ex asse.
<i>Heirs to half the estate.</i>	Heres ex dimidia parte.

232. In.

i. <i>For the future.</i>	In posterum.
ii. <i>To postpone till to-morrow.</i>	In crastinum differre.
<i>I will invite him for the 1st March.</i>	In Kalendas Martias vocabo.
iii. <i>Considering the crisis.</i>	Tali in re,

iv.	<i>In the case of a noble.</i>	In homine nobili.
v.	<i>A ditch of six feet in depth.</i>	Fossa sex pedum in altitudinem.
vi.	<i>Anger against Cassius.</i>	Ira in Cassium.
	<i>Authority over slaves.</i>	Imperium in servos.
vii.	<i>Stern towards all.</i>	Severus in omnes.
	<i>He gave them ten thousand sesterces apiece.</i>	In singulos dena milia divisit.
	<i>Five sesterces each.</i>	Quinque sestertios in caput.
	<i>In the fashion of a slave.</i>	Servilem in modum.
	<i>In a wondrous way.</i>	Mirum in modum.
viii.	<i>A legion was sent to garrison Rheyum.</i>	Rhegium missa in praesidium legio.
ix.	<i>In turn.</i>	In vicem.

233. Infra.

i.	<i>Smaller than an elephant.</i>	Infra elephantum.
ii.	<i>He lived later than Lycurgus.</i>	Infra Lycurgum fuit.
iii.	<i>I have described an instance below.</i>	Exemplum infra scripsi.

234. Inter.

Inter se, *one another*, added to verbs to convey the reciprocal or reflexive force.

<i>They are on friendly terms.</i>	Inter se amant.
<i>They are all so much alike one another that I get confused about their names.</i>	Omnis tantam habent similitudinem inter se, ut in praenominibus eorum errem.

235. Iuxta.

i.	<i>All the rest, equally innocent, were likewise punished.</i>	Adiecti sunt poenae ceteri iuxta insontes.
ii.	<i>Just like.</i>	Iuxta ac.

236. Palam.

i.	<i>I am merely mentioning what is well known.</i>	Haec commemoro quae sunt palam.
ii.	<i>Overtly in the sight of all men.</i>	Palam ante oculos omnium,

237. **Penes.**

Of persons exclusively.

i. *All the power ought to be in the hands of Cn. Pompeius.* Penes Cn. Pompeium omnis potestas debet esse.

238. **Per.**

i. *If you allow it.*

Si per te licet.

ii. *It was effected through the instrumentality of the consuls.*

Per consules factum est.

iii. *By the immortal gods.*

Per deos immortales.

I pray you by the gods.

Per te deos oro.

Note the position of the pronoun.

iv. *Of himself, of itself, spontaneously.*

Per se.

v. *It was your fault that the debt was not repaid.*

Per te stetit, quominus id redde-
retur.

239. **Post.**

i. *Lydia was not inferior to Chloe.*

Non erat Lydia post Chloen.

ii. *Two hundred years later.*

Ducentis post annis.

240. **Prae.**

i. *To bring to view, display.*

Prae se ferre.

ii. *Because of its size.*

Prae magnitudine.

iii. *He could not speak for grief.*

Prae maerore loqui non poterat
(only with a negative).

241. **Praeter.**

i. *Beyond bounds, exceptionally.*

Praeter modum.

ii. *One should avoid familiarity, except with a very few persons.*

Cavendae sunt familiaritates,
praeter hominum perpaucorum.

242. **Pro.**

i. *For both our sakes.*

Pro me et pro te.

ii. *In proportion to their numbers.*

Pro numero.

243. Prope.

All degrees (*propius, proxime*) admit the prepositional construction with the accusative.

i. <i>Near the city.</i>	Prope ab urbe, or prope urbem.
ii. <i>To be somewhere near at hand.</i>	Prope alicubi esse.
iii. <i>That part of the isle which lies nearer to the west.</i>	Pars insulae quae est propius solis occasum.
iv. <i>The act had come very near to robbery.</i>	Res proxime formam latrociniil venerat.

244. Propter.

His two sons sleeping near at hand. Duo filii propter cubantes.

245. Secundum.

i. <i>Along the stream (up or down).</i>	Secundum flumen.
ii. <i>After the battle.</i>	Secundum pugnam.
iii. <i>Beside the sea.</i>	Secundum mare.
iv. <i>According to law.</i>	Secundum leges.

246. Sub.

i. <i>Just at dawn.</i>	Sub lucem.
ii. <i>Under discussion, undecided.</i>	Sub iudice.

247. Super.

i. <i>They fell dead one upon another.</i>	Alii super alios occiduntur.
ii. <i>Beyond the walls.</i>	Super moenia.
iii. <i>They throw purple garments over them.</i>	Purpureas super vestes coniciunt.

248. Supra.

As I remarked above. Quod supra dixi.

249. Tenus.

i. <i>Up to the lips.</i>	(with genitive, usually plural) Labrum tenus.
ii. <i>Nominally.</i>	Verbo tenus.

250. Versus.

With names of towns usually, often coupled with *ad*, and always standing after its case:

<i>Towards the river.</i>	Ad flumen versus.
<i>In the direction of Vienne.</i>	Viennam versus.
<i>Eastwards.</i>	Ad orientem versus,

CHAPTER XVIII.

ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OF THE PREDICATE.
PHRASES EXPRESSING SPACE AND TIME.

251. Extent of space is in Latin expressed by the accusative.

Il est donc à l'heure actuelle impossible de déterminer la quantité exacte de la matière primaire dans l'univers.

From this point he recollects
troubled just a little by the loss of
the sword.

The last is a female, the 2nd a female, both in 1500 ft. Except maxi Polyxenis duegensis
by her side, *Coronogenes lati.*

252. Much more frequently the measure of the length, breadth, or height of a thing will be expressed as a genitive of quality. Thus the words—

A ditch ten feet deep
may be variously translated

- i. *Fossa decem pedum in altitudinem.*
- ii. *Fossa decem pedum altitudinis.*
- iii. *Fossa decem pedum altitudine.*
- iv. *Fossa decem pedum.*
- v. *Fossa decem pedes alti.*

The various renderings are here given in an order corresponding to the frequency with which they occur.

253. The road or route by which a person comes or goes is expressed in Latin by the ablative.

They passed by cross roads over the
lands of Libeum to the hills of
Tusculum.

Transversis itineribus per Labi-
canos agros in Tusculanos
colles transibant.

He made his way to Melodunum by the same way as he had come. Eodem, quo venerat, itinere Melodunum pervenit.

Terra, “by land,” and *mari*, “by sea,” are specific instances of the ablative of the way by which, while *pedibus*, “on foot,” *classe*, “by ship” or “by sea,” are more generally instrumental.

254. “From the direction of,” “on the side of,” are expressed by the ablative with *a* or *ab*; “towards,” “in the direction of,” by the accusative with *ad*, less often with *versus*.

He will be entrapped in the rear and front and flanks, if once he enters Gaul. A tergo, fronte, lateribus, tenebitur, si in Galliam venerit.

From the inner bend of the bay juts out a peninsula, that is itself the low hill upon which the city is built. On the east and south the city is surrounded by the sea; on the west it is bounded by a lagoon, which spreads also a little way to the north.

They made an attempt to force their way into the camp on the side of the Decuman gate. Ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur.

Ab intimo sinu paeninsula excurrit, tumulus is ipse, in quo condita urbs est, ab ortu solis et a meridie cincta mari. Ab occasu stagnum claudit, paulum et ad septentrionem fusum.

255. “On the right (hand),” “on the left (hand)” are *dextra* or *a dextra* (sc. *manu*), *laeva*, *sinistra*, or *a laeva*, *a sinistra* (sc. *manu*). “Over against,” “opposite to,” is *e* (or *ab*) *regione* with a dependent genitive, or (rarely) a dative. *Ab altera parte*, “on the other side”; *ex diversa parte*, “from or in a different quarter.”

256. Other phrases representing relations of space may be classified into those which express

- (1) Place whither.
- (2) Place whence.
- (3) Place where.

257. Both in Latin and English the name of the place whither a person goes, whence he comes, or where he is, is preceded by a preposition. "Place whither" has in English the prepositions *to, into, on to, under*, in Latin the prepositions *ad, in, super, sub*, all used with the accusative. Place whence in English has the prepositions *from, out of*, in Latin *a or ab, e or er, de*, "down from," all governing the ablative. Place where has in English the prepositions *at, in, over, on, under*, in Latin *ad* with the accusative, *in, super* ("over," "on"), *sub*, with the ablative.

They found Lucretia sitting sorrowful in her chamber.

Lucretiam sedentem macstam in cubiculo inveniunt.

After the fight by lake Regillus there was no other more glorious in those years.

Post pugnam ad Regillum lacum non alia illis annis clarior fuit.

In this year the Gauls encamped on the Solarium Way, at the third milestone beyond the bridge over the Aua.

Eo anno Galli ad tertium lapidem Salaria via trans pontem Anienis castra habuere.

Advancing as far as the river they tried to beat our men back from the higher ground.

Ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibebant.

They filled bombs with pitch, set them alight, and flung them down from the wall upon the siege-engine.

Cupas pice refertas incendunt, easque de muro in musculum devolunt.

258. Notice that Latin prepositions are used in the strictest sense; e.g., "they drove the citizens from the city" is *cives ex urbe expulerunt*, but "they drove back the enemy from the city" is *hostes ab urbe reppulerunt*.

259. If qualified by the epithets *medius* or *totus*, a common substantive will usually stand in the ablative without *in* to denote the place at or in which.

The shops are being closed through-out the city. Tabernae tota urbe clauduntur.

He commenced to hold a levy throughout the whole of the province. Dilectum tota provincia habere instituit.

Throughout the camp there was a general making of wills. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur.

Even in Caesar this usage is already extended to many other epithets, particularly with the ablative *locum*, but the safe rule is to insert the preposition, except with *medius* and *totus*.

260. To this general rule (see § 257) there are two constant exceptions, for no preposition is required with—

(a) Proper names of places and of islands small enough to be regarded as single places.

(b) The common substantives *rus* and *domus*.

261. I. In such cases, in expressions of “place whither” and “place whence,” the prepositions are omitted, and the name stands in the accusative (place whither) or ablative (place whence).

It happened that the consul Quintius had returned from Mount Algidus to Rome. Forte ab Algido Quintius consul redierat Romam.

I should hesitate to deny that the Gauls were guided to Clusium by Arruns, or by some other native of Clusium. Evidem haud abnuerim Clusium Gallos ab Arrunte, seu alio quo Clusino, adductos.

The enemy learnt the facts from those who had escaped from Melodunum. Hostes ab iis, qui Meloduno fugerant, rem cognoscunt.

He prevented the import of supplies from Byllide and Amanitia. Commeatus Byllide atque Amanitia importari in oppidum prohibebat.

Without Caesar's knowledge Dumnorix and the Aeduan cavalry began to leave the camp and go homewards. Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduarum a castris inscente Caesare domum discedere coepit.

The corpse of Lucretia they bore forth from her house and carried down to the Forum. Elatum domo Lucretiae corpus in forum deferunt.

262. III. In the case of "place where" (1) an ablative, (2) a locative may be used.

(1) The ablative occurs with all place-names except singular nouns of the 1st and 2nd declensions; *e.g.*,

He said he should be in Puteoli for one day, and the next near Baiae. Puteolis se uiebat unum diem fore, alterum ad Baiae.

The very same thing occurred at Ptolemais. Hoc item Ptolemaide accidit.

(2) The locative is used with all place names of the 1st and 2nd declensions singular; *dōmus, rūs*; and a few other common substantives, *e.g. hūni*, "on the ground"; *belli* and *militiae*, "in the field," "at the wars."

For many months there was fighting at Tusculum. Aliquot menses Tusculi bellatum.

Leaving at Agedincum the supplementary lures which had lately arrived from Italy, Labienus started for Lutetia with four legions. Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agedinci, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur.

Do not all men know that this city of ours was founded under auspices, and that under auspices, too, we perform every act of war or peace, at home or in the field? Auspiciis hanc urbem conditam esse, auspiciis bello ac pace, domi militiaeque omnia geri, quis est qui ignoret?

263. In expressions of measure of distance, the amount of the distance may be expressed by (a) the accusative, according to § 251; (b) the ablative; or (c) the ablative with *a* or *ab* (rarely).

They were half a mile or less from the camp. Minus quingentos passus a castri is aberant.

He pitched a camp two miles beyond. Milibus passuum duobus ultra castra fecit.

Hannibal encamped some fifteen miles from Tarentum.

Hannibal quindecim ferme milium spatio castra ab Tarento posuit.

Planting ambuscades in two divisions in convenient and secret spots in the forests, two miles away or thereabouts, they proceeded to await the arrival of the Romans.

Collocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis occulto et opportuno loco, a milibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanorum adventum exspectabant.

264. In any other instance a preposition will only be used with place-names to convey some special shade of meaning.

During this time the consul Nautius fought a brilliant engagement with the Sabines in the neighbourhood of Eretum.

Per eos dies consul Nautius ad Eretum cum Sabinis egregie pugnat.

He began to march down the stream in the direction of Lutetia.

Secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit.

The vessels which he had brought down from the direction of Melodunum he allotted each to a Roman knight.

Naves, quas a Meloduno deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romanis attribuit.

265. Notice the difference of idiom between English and Latin in such expressions as the following.

She despatched one and the same message to her father at (i.e. to) Rome and to her husband at (i.e. to) Ardea.

Nuntium eundem Romam ad patrem Ardeamque ad virum mittit.

With these troops he made his way to Domitius at Corfinium.

Cum his militibus ad Domitium Corfinium pervenit.

Messages were sent at the same time from her father at (i.e. from) Rome and from her husband at (i.e. from) Ardea.

Nuntii eodem tempore Roma a patre Ardeaque a viro missi sunt.

I arrived at Corfinium.

Corfinium adveni.

Contrast also the following.

Were they to seek advice abroad rather than at home?

You can approach my estate at Laurentum by two roads, both the road to Laurentum and that to Ostia leading to it; but you have to leave the Laurentum road only at the fourteenth milestone, while the Ostia road must be quitted at the eleventh.

Consilium foris potius quam domo peterent?

Aditur Laurentinum meum non una via. Nam et Laurentina et Ostiensis eodem ferunt, sed Laurentina a quarto decimo lapide, Ostiensis ab undecimo relinquenda est.

266. The word *domi*, “at home,” may have an adjective (usually possessive) attributed to it, in which case the locative is treated as genitive; e.g. *domi meae*, *domi suae*, “at my house,” “at his (her, their) home.”

267. In all expressions of measure (as distinct from motion) the ablative with a preposition is essential, and *ad* is commonly used with the noun to which the distance is measured.

Teanum is eighteen miles away from Larinum.

All the townships that lie between Tibo and Brundisium . . .

Having accomplished this task he blockaded all the harbours, roadsteads, and coasts from Salona to Oricum.

Teanum abest a Larino octodecim milia passuum.

Omnia illa municipia quae sunt a Vibone Brundisium . . .

Hoc confecto negotio a Salonis ad Oricum portus, stationes, litora omnia classibus occupavit.

268. Such a phrase as “ten days after or before” may be rendered in the following ways—

“He arrived ten days after (before).”

i. *Pervenit decimo post (ante) die.*

ii. *Pervenit post (ante) decimum diem.*

iii. *Pervenit post (ante) decem dies.*

In the first case *post* (or *ante*) is an adverb, in the other two a preposition.

269. The several relations of—

- i. The time during which
- ii. The time at or within which } the verbal action or state does,
- iii. The time until which } did, or will occur or continue,

may be expressed in a simple sentence by an adverb or adverbial phrase, or by a substantive in the accusative or ablative case.

270. Duration of time, which is in English expressed by the objective case with or without the preposition "for," is in Latin expressed by the accusative.

Servius Tullius reigned for four and forty years. Servius Tullius regnavit annos quattuor et quadraginta.

He had now been five days without food. Diem iam quintum cibo caruerat.

I find it recorded that there was one Arganthonius at Gades who reigned eighty years and lived one hundred and twenty. Fuit, ut scriptum video, Arganthonius quidam Gadibus, qui octoginta regnarit annos, centum viginti vixit.

271. "Ago."—The same accusative is joined with *ab hinc* when referring to a date in the past.

You were a quaestor when Cn. Papirius was consul, fourteen years ago. Quaestor Cn. Papirio consule fuisti, abhinc annos quattuordecim.

272. "Aged"—And with *natus* to express the years or days of a person's age.

A Roman knight of nearly ninety years of age. Eques Romanus annos prope nonaginta natus.

273. The time at or within which anything takes place, which in English is expressed by substantives constructed with the prepositions "at," "on," "in," "within," in Latin is expressed by the simple ablative.

In the same year the town of Sora was recaptured. Eodem anno oppidum Sora recepta est.

Within a fortnight or so the whole war was over. Quindecim ferme diebus totum bellum confectum est.

274. The time until which anything lasts, which in English is expressed by substantives preceded by "till" or "until" or "up to," is in Latin expressed by the accusative with *ad, ad usque, and in.*

He would lunch, take a very brief nap, and presently study again until dinner time. Gustabat, dormiebatque minimum: mox in cenae tempus studebat.

275. Idioms of time:

<i>Finally, in the end.</i>	Ad ultimum.
<i>At first.</i>	Primum, primo.
<i>At the beginning.</i>	Principio.
<i>As soon as possible.</i>	Cum primum.
<i>By day, by night.</i>	Interdiu, noctu.
<i>Until late in the day.</i>	Ad multum diem.
<i>At midnight.</i>	De media nocte.
<i>Late in the day.</i>	De multo die.
<i>At this date.</i>	Hoc temporis.
<i>At that time of life.</i>	Id aetatis.
<i>Day by day, year by year.</i>	In dies, in annos.*
<i>From day to day.</i>	In diem ex die.
<i>On the march.</i>	In itinere.
<i>Immediately after the march.</i>	Ex itinere.
<i>In the present.</i>	In praesentia.
<i>In the future.</i>	In posterum.
<i>Every year, yearly.</i>	In singulos annos.
<i>Every day, daily.</i>	Cotidie.
<i>Within my life-time.</i>	Memoria mea.

* Admissible only with comparatives, or equivalent words and phrases, indicating daily increase or diminution; e.g. *crescit in annos*, "it waxes year by year"; *in dies magis aegrotat*, "he grows more unwell every day."

<i>Since I can remember.</i>	Post memoriam meam.
<i>Just at dawn.</i>	Sub lucem.
<i>Day before yesterday.</i>	Nudius tertius.
<i>A thousand times, again and again.</i>	Sescenties.
<i>Consul for the second, third time.</i>	Consul iterum, tertium.

CHAPTER XIX.

PRONOUNS.

276. The English verb being for the most part uninflected, English personal pronouns can rarely be omitted. But in Latin such pronouns are never inserted except (i) to mark emphasis, or (ii) for the sake of distinction or contrast. Thus they must always be inserted when two or more subjects of different persons occur in the same sentence or clause (see § 153). This does not hold good in the accusative and infinitive construction, in which the subject (accusative) should always be expressed.

277. The same rule applies to the use of the demonstratives *is* (*ea, id*) and *ille* (*illa, illud*), occasionally also *hic* (*haec, hoc*), which are used in lieu of personal pronouns of the third person for "he," "she," "it," "they," and the corresponding oblique cases.

278. In the same way the possessives are usually omitted, the Latin rule being that where no possessive is expressed the possessor is presumed to be the subject, and conversely the subject is presumed to be also the possessor unless another possessor is mentioned. The possessives will be added therefore only where emphasis, or the desire to avoid ambiguity, demands it.

The possessive of the third person ("his," "her," "its," "their") is—

279. i. If the possessor is also the subject, *suus* (*sua, suum*). But this will be used only to avoid ambiguity or for the sake of emphasis.

Similarly the men of Alba recited their own formula and their own oath, in the person of their dictator and priests of their own. *Sua item carmina Albani suumque ius iurandum per suum dictatorem suosque sacerdotes peregerunt.*

280. ii. If the possessor is not also the subject, *eius*, *eorum*, *earum*, or, more emphatic, *illius*, *illorum*, *illarum*, according to the gender and number required.

*Even when now despairing of their
lives the enemy displayed splendid
valour, climbing upon the prostrate
bodies of those who fell near them
and carrying on the fight from
that position.*

*If you grant to Naso what he asks,
the honour is his; if you refuse
it, the rebuke is mine.*

Hostes, etiam in extrema spe
salutis, tantam virtutem prae-
stiterunt, ut, cum primi eorum
cecidissent, proximi iacentibus
insisterent, atque ex eorum
corporibus pugnarent.

Si datur Nasoni quod petit, illius
honor; si negatur, mea repulsa
est.

281. The English emphatic pronouns "myself," "yourself," "himself," "ourselves," "yourselves," "themselves" are translated by the Latin pronoun *ipse*. As the person in Latin is determined by the verb inflection, not by the expression of the pronoun, *ipse*, if the subject, may mean "myself," "yourself," or "himself," according to the context, and *ipsci* "ourselves," "yourselves," "themselves."

*They are themselves descendants of
the Cimbri.*

You see it yourselves.

Ipsi erant ex Cimbris prognati.

Ipsi cernitis.

282. The English reflexive pronouns "myself," "yourself," "ourselves," and "yourselves" are translated by the oblique cases of the personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*. Thus "you ruined yourself" is *te perdidisti*. The English reflexives "himself," "herself," "itself," "themselves" are translated by the Latin reflexive *se*. The English third personal pronoun, "he," "she," "it," in principal clauses is never translated by *se*.

283. In subordinate substantival clauses which are translated by the Latin accusative and infinitive, the English third personal pronoun when it refers to the subject of the principal verb is translated by *se*; in other subordinate clauses, under the same circumstances, it is frequently so translated.

He promised that he would spare his friend. Promisit se amico esse parsurum.

Caesar sent a Gaul who was loyal to him. Caesar Gallum, qui sibi erat fidus, misit.

284. *Se* and *ipse* can be used together for emphasis, as we might use the emphatic and reflexive pronoun in English, *e.g.* “he himself killed himself,” *ipse se interfecit*. This construction is awkward in English, and therefore not common, but it is fairly common in Latin.

I deceived myself: I am my own consolation. Me ipse fecelli: me ipse consolor.

They fell to killing themselves with their own hands. Se ipsi trucidabant.

285. *Ipse* is a convenient word for rendering a number of English phrases equivalent to no more than emphatic stress upon the subject.

With my own eyes I saw it. Ipse vidi.

He set out in person with a few horsemen. Ipse cum paucis equitibus profectus est.

Ipse would also be used where the stress in English was due to the context, and was not indicated by a special phrase such as “in person.”

Horatius' companions drew back, but he remained. Horatii comites se receperunt, ipse loco mansit.

286. English has only one third personal pronoun, and therefore is frequently compelled, when speaking of several different persons, to insert names, use periphrases (see above, § 153), or worst of all explain pronouns by appositional phrases; this is particularly the case in reported speech. Latin being rich in demonstratives, which can be used to translate the third person, frequently has a pronoun where English requires a name or periphrasis, *e.g.* “my client,” *hic*, “my opponent,” *ille* or *iste*, and similarly in reported speech.

(Caesar said) Indutiomarus was now reconciled to Cingetorix, and in view of the latter's services he would consider that chieftain a friend.

(Dixit Caesar) iam conciliatum esse Indutiomarum Cingetorix, cuius pro beneficis se illum in numero amicorum esse habiturum.

287. The three demonstrative pronouns *hic*, *iste*, *ille* are, in a sense, related to the three persons of the verb: *hic*, "this person in whom I am interested," e.g., as above, "my client"; *iste*, "that person in whom you are interested"; and *ille* and *is*, "third persons in whom neither you nor I are specially interested"; but *hic* and *ille* are often interchangeable. *Iste* and all its derivative adverbs—*istuc*, "in your direction"; *istic*, "where you are"; and *istinc*, "whence you come"—have always the second personal reference.

What you say is quite true.

Sunt ista quidem vera.

I intend to run over to the place you mention (or to that place of yours) if my business allows me.

Destino, si officii ratio permiserit, excurrere isto.

288. *Ille*, with or without an adjective, is constantly used substantivally or adjectivally with the implication of notoriety.

Everyone knows the famous saying of Cato . . .

Notum illud Catonis . . .

The famous Fabius Maximus.

Maximus ille Fabius.

289. *Hoc*, *illud*, and sometimes *id*, are often anticipatory, i.e. standing as subject or object to denote something which is further explained in the next clause.

It was rather a nasty thing to say that I invented on the spur of the moment what I said about Plancius.

Fuit illud asperius, me quae de Plancio dicerem, temporis causa fingere.

It was a remarkable thing, too, that he, who had been consul when Nero fell, was the last to die.

Illud etiam notabile, ultimus obiit quo consule Nero periit.

290. The demonstrative adjectives (*hic*, *is*, *ille*) when used predicatively are commonly assimilated to the gender of the subject.

But this would have been real life and true good fortune, to be on a level with the rest in freedom, in honours only their chief.

I shall stay here in Rome. This is my home, this my watch, this my charge, this my lasting post of guard.

Illa erat vita, illa secunda fortuna,
libertate esse parem ceteris,
principem dignitatem.

In urbe manebo. Haec mea sedes
est, haec vigilia, haec custodia,
hoc praesidium stativum.

291. *Hic* and *ille*, *hi* and *illi*, are used to represent respectively "the latter" and "the former," where two persons or things, or two groups of persons or things, are in question. Occasionally, however, these meanings are reversed.

If the latter remedies fail you, you must have recourse to the former.

Beware of preferring to Cato even him whom Apollo judged the wisest: for only the deeds of the former, but the words also of the latter, are to be praised.

Si deerunt haec remedia, ad illa
declinandum est.

Cave Catoni anteponas ne istum
quidem ipsum quem Apollo
sapientissimum iudicavit, huius
enim facta, illius dicta laudan-
tur.

292. The English word "other" in its various uses often causes difficulty.

1. Where two persons or things, or two groups of persons or things, are spoken of without further indication as to which is which, *alter* . . . *alter* . . . , *alteri* . . . , *alteri* . . . , must be used.

Of these two classes the one is that of the Druids, the other that of the Knights.

The Aedui were head of one faction, the Sequani of the other.

De his duobus generibus alterum
est Druidum, alterum equitum.

Alterius factionis principes erant
Aedui, alterius Sequani.

It would have nothing to do with either the living or the dead; the dead are nothing, and it will not touch the living.

Nec ad vivos pertineat, nec ad mortuos; alteri nulli sunt, alteros non attinget.

¶

2. Where more than two persons or things are concerned, they may be referred to in various ways, by (i) *alius . . . aliis . . . aliis . . .*; (ii) *hic . . . ille . . . aliis . . .*; (iii) *hic . . . alter . . . tertius . . .*; (iv) by *hic* or *ille* repeated.

Of those who believe that the soul leaves the body, some believe it to disappear at once, others think that it continues to exist for a long period, and others again believe it lives for ever.

Qui discedere animum a corpore censent, alii statim dissipari, alii diu permanere, alii semper.

¶

Some were calling for their parents, others for their children, others for their husbands or their wives. Some bewailed their own fate, others the fate of their kindred.

Alii parentes, alii liberos, alii coniuges vocibus requirebant. Hi suum casum, illi suorum miserabantur.

293. “The others” (i.e. of many), “the rest,” is (*ceteri*), *cetera*, *-um*, or *reliquus*.

The other is called Capito, but the one here present is named Magnus.

Alteri Capitoni cognomen est; iste, qui adest, Magnus vocatur.

He stationed the rest of his force as a reserve.

Ceterum exercitum in subsidiis locat.

Livy constantly uses *alius* in the sense of *reliquus*.

“Another,” “others” (of an indefinite number), is *alius*, *alii*.

Is there any other course left for (brave) men?

Estne viris reliqui aliud?

294. “Other than” is *alius ac* (*atque*), “otherwise than” *aliter ac*, and “the same as” is similarly *idem ac*.

Flaccus issued a decree. Well, was that otherwise than right?

Decrevit Flaccus. Num aliud atque oportuit?

He perceived that he must adopt some other plan than that which he had thus far entertained. Aliud sibi capiendum consilium atque antea senserat intelligebat.

Similarly *alius . . . aliis . . .* in independent predication in such expressions as—

Hence one infers that what is noble and what is great are different things. Inde colligitur, alia esse clariora, alia maiora.

Now they understand that to carry off maidens, and to do battle with men, are vastly different things. Iam sciunt longe aliud esse virginis rapere, aliud pugnare cum viris.

295. "One another" is *alius . . . aliis*, or quite as often *inter se* (§ 284).

They asked one another the reason for the uproar. Alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit.

True friends will not merely make much of one another and love one another. They will also respect one another. Veri amici non solum colent inter se ac diligent, sed etiam verebuntur.

296. "One" in Latin is *unus*, but where only two things are in question *alter*; e.g. "one consul," *alter consul*. **Two** is *duo*, but "the two," "both," is *uterque* (lit. "each of two"), where the two things are of the same kind and what is said of both is true of each. "Both parties or sides" is *utriusque*, "both taken together" is *ambo*.

Both parties made a savage use of their victory. Utrique victoriam crudeliter exercebant.

Both were Arcadians. Arcades ambo.

297. Each (of two) is *uterque*, each (more than two) *quisque*. Where "each" is the subject of the English verb and followed by a partitive prepositional phrase, the noun of the English prepositional phrase is in Latin the subject, and *quisque* stands in apposition to it, the verb being plural.

Each of the Romans brought his own horse. Romani suum quisque equum adduxerunt.

The commonest uses of *quisque* are (a) with *se* and *sunis*, (b) with *ut* = "as," (c) with relatives, (d) with superlatives, e.g. *optimus quisque*, "all the best men," (e) with ordinals, e.g. *tertius quisque*, "every third man."

Every one must use his own judgment. *Suo cuique est iudicio utendum.*

Each addressed the people in his own way. *Pro se quisque ad populum loquebatur.*

Each of us, they say, has enough and to spare of worries of his own. *Satis superque esse sibi suarum cuique rerum dicunt.*

The army paraded with the various evolutions and exercises peculiar to each of the tribes composing it. *Exercitus decucurrit cum motibus armorum et corporum suae cuique genti assuetis.*

Each took his station at the spot to which he had chanced to come. *Quam quisque in partem casu devenit, ibi constituit.*

To determine just what each must do for each requires a capable judge. *Magni est iudicis statuere, quid quemque cuique oporteat prae-stare.*

Every tenth man was selected for punishment. *Decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti (sunt).*

He moved that the envoys should start for their several provinces. *In suas quisque provincias legati proficiscerentur, censuit.*

The sight of you sitting here restores and renews my courage whenever I look upon each one of you. *Conspectus iste et consensus reficit et recreat mentem meam, cum intueor unum quemque vestrum.*

We have with us in arms all the bravest of the warriors. *Ferocissimus quisque iuvenum cum armis adest.*

298. "Every one," when distributive, i.e. where in English the stress would be on the *one*, is *unus quisque*, as above; but when collective, i.e. where in English the stress is on the *every*, it is translated *omnes*, or more idiomatically *nemo non*, or *nemo quin*; e.g. "everyone knows" is *omnes sciunt*, *nescit nemo*, or *nemo est quin sciatur*.

299. The following pronouns and pronominal adjectives are used to translate any one and any:

Pronominal.	Adjectival.
quisquām	ullus
quis	qui
ecquis	ecqui
aliquis	aliqui
	quiris
	quilibet

In the neuter singular there is both a substantival and adjectival form of *quiris* and *quilibet*, e.g. "any thing" is *quidvis* (or *quidlibet*), and "any war" is *quodvis* (or *quodlibet*) *bellum*.

300. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used after negatives (except *ne*) and in rhetorical questions.

There was not of them all any one *Neque ex castris quisquam omnium discesserat.*
who had left the camp.

301. After *si*, *ne*, *nisi*, *num*, *quando*, "any" is rendered by *quis* (pronominal) or *qui* (adjectival); and, where possible, the preferable idiom is the pronominal neuter singular (*quid*) with a dependent partitive genitive. The relative (*qui*) is also used to convey a conditional sense.

If he had any spare time, he would lie in the sun. *Si quid otii erat, iacebat in sole.*

Take care you don't make any mistake. *Cave ne quid erres.*

If he had any time left, he devoted it to literature. *Quod reliquum esset temporis studiis reddebat.*

302. *Ecquis* translates *any* in interrogative sentences other than the above.

Is anyone there? *Ecquis adest?*

303. In the sense of "any you like," "any at all," *quiris*, *quilibet*, may be used.

All the facts are such as anyone may comprehend. Omnia sunt eiusmodi, quivis ut perspicere possit.

Any sailor you choose may manage the helm when the seas are calm. Quilibet nautarum tranquillo mari gubernare potest.

304. In other constructions the normal equivalent for “any” is *aliquis* or *aliqui*.

What I want to know is, are we to suppose anything was done or not? Quaero utrum aliquid actum an nihil arbitremur.

305. (i) Where “some” is used in its most definite sense, *i.e.* referring to a certain definite individual or individuals known to the writer, the equivalent is *est qui, sunt qui*, followed by the indicative (but see also § 123).

Some people deny this. Haec sunt qui negant.

306. (ii) “Some one” meaning “an individual,” “a person,” and “some” denoting “certain individuals,” “a few (persons)” whom the writer knows, but does not think fit to mention by name, will be rendered by *quidam*.

Someone from Athens. Atheniensis quidam.

I recollect that one of his friends called him back. Memini quemdam ex amicis revo-
casse.

307. (iii) “Some” representing the partitive frequently has no equivalent in Latin. Otherwise it is represented by *aliquis*, and where possible the preferable idiom is the pronominal neuter singular (*aliquid*) with a dependent partitive genitive.

He went on ahead with some cavalry. Ipse cum equitatu praegressus est.

I was trying to prevent their uttering some lie. Laborabam ne falsi aliquid (or ne quid falsi) dicerent.

308. (iv) Where a series of persons or groups is meant, the equivalent may be *alius . . . alius . . . alii . . . alii . . .*, or *hic . . . ille*, according to § 292.

309. (v) "Someone" in its most indefinite sense (*i.e.* = "someone, but it doesn't matter who") is *nescio quis* or *nescio qua* (pronominal) or *nescio qui* or *nescio quae* (adjectival), neuter *nescio quid* and *nescio quod*.

But ill-gotten gains are soon ill spent, as is said in some poet or other. Sed, ut est apud poetam nescio quem, male parta male dilabuntur.

Then came some man or other called Saxa. Accedit Saxa nescio quis.

310. (vi) Still vaguer is *aliquis*.

"*What, brugging?*" a man may say. Tu de te gloriaris? dixerit aliquis.

You must give them something to get hold of. Dandum est aliquid quod teneant.

There is some difference between toil and pain. They are very closely akin, yet a difference there is. Interest aliquid inter laborem et dolorem. Sunt finitima omnino, sed tamen differt aliquid.

311. "Some" meaning "not a few," "a considerable quantity," is *nonnullus*, *aliquot*, or *aliquantus*, sometimes *aliquis*, *aliqui*.

After some (i.e. many) years. Post aliquot annos.

For a considerable time he practised as a barrister. Aliquamdiu causas agebat.

I see that some of you are nervous. Nonnullos video timere.

So *nonnumquam* means "not seldom," "sometimes"; *nonnusquam*, "in some places"; *nonnihil*, "a good deal."

CHAPTER XX.

COMMANDS AND QUESTIONS.

312. So far the only form of simple sentence which has been considered has been the statement. Commands and questions do not as a rule occur in narrative except in quotations, and are not very common even in oratory. Nevertheless some knowledge of the rules which deal with their expression in Latin is useful with a view to understanding the dependent command and question (§§ 97 f., 145 f.), which are common in all forms of composition.

313. Under the term "command" may be included "the prohibition," "the request." In direct commands in all persons the mood in Latin must be either the imperative or subjunctive. The Latin negative is *ne*.

314. A positive command addressed to a subject in the second person is rendered by the present imperative.

<i>Now rouse thyself in very truth !</i>	Nunc expurgiscere vere.
<i>Go, lictor, bind his hands !</i>	I, lictor, colliga manus !
<i>Mark ye the fellow's impudence !</i>	Videte hominis audaciam !
<i>Follow me then, not to a battle, but to a massacre !</i>	Me sequimini ad caedem, non ad pugnam.

315. A negative command addressed to a second person is rendered in Latin by the imperative of the verb *nolo*, "I am unwilling" (*noli*, *nolite*), followed by the infinitive.

Don't show this letter to Atticus.

Noli hanc epistulam Attico ostendere.

Don't think, my dear children, that when I have left you, I shall be altogether annihilated.

Nolite arbitrari, o mihi carissimi filii, me, cum a vobis discessero, nusquam aut nullum fore.

Do not wait until they escape from you, while you stand still.

Nolite exspectare dum stantes vos fugiant.

316. For *noli* and *nolite* may be substituted *cave* and *cavete*, "take care," followed by a dependent negative command. Colloquially there was originally a negative command which was negative in form as well as meaning; e.g. *ne quaesieris*, "do not seek," but it is very rare in classical prose.

317. Both in the case of positive and negative commands in the second person, if the subject is indefinite, i.e. if the command is a general maxim, the present subjunctive may be used.

Make use of that blessing while it is with you; when it is no longer with you, ask it not. *Isto bono utare dum adsit; cum absit, ne requiras.*

(You should) never trust a liar. *Mendaci homini ne credas.*

318. English only recognises commands addressed to the second person. The so-called commands in the first or third person, e.g. "let us go," "let them die," are rendered by the present subjunctive.

But let us pass over that campaign, in which you were so unlucky. *Sed omittamus (or omittatur) bellum illud, in quo tu nimium felix fuisti.*

M. Antonius desires peace, does he? Then let him lay down his arms and ask for it, sue for it. *Pacem vult M. Antonius? Arma deponat, roget, deprecatur.*

319. Akin to commands are wishes; but commands can only refer to future time, and wishes, which reasonably should only refer to the future, include regrets as to

the present and past. All wishes in Latin are rendered by the subjunctive mood.

320. Wishes referring to the future are expressed in English by the verb "may," in Latin by the present subjunctive, with or without *utinam*, the negative being *ne* or occasionally (with *utinam*) *non*.

I wish I could as easily find out what is true as refute what is false! Utinam tam facile vera invenire possim, quam falsa convincere!

I hope this may not be true! Utinam ne hoc verum sit!

321. Wishes referring to the present or past are in rhetorical English expressed by "would" or "O," followed by a dependent clause with the verb in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive: in plain English by the statement "I wish," followed by an object clause with the verb in the past or past perfect subjunctive or indicative. In Latin the imperfect subjunctive is used for wishes referring to the present, and the pluperfect subjunctive for wishes referring to the past. But if the thing wished for has duration in time, then the imperfect subjunctive may be used to refer to the past in this latter case also.

O that this charge which you make were true! There would then be more of my friends and companions still alive. Utinam hoc tuum verum crimen esset! Plures amici et necessarii viverent.

I wish to goodness neither he nor I regretted it! Utinam neque ipsum neque me paeniteret.

I only wish you had been able to avoid all suspicion, even as you avoided all blame. Utinam ut culpam, sic etiam suspicionem vitare potuisses!

I wish he had always worked. Utinam semper laboraret!

322. Wishes referring to (1) the future or (2) the present or past may also be expressed in Latin by the tenses of the subjunctive quoted above (§§ 320-1), used

in semi-dependence on the potential subjunctives (1) *velim*, (2) *vellem*.

I wish he may be able to come. *Velim possit venire.*

I wish this charge of yours were (had been) true. *Vellem hoc tuum verum crimen esset (fuisset).*

323. Questions.—There are three ways of expressing a question in English: (1) The verb or some part of it may be placed before the subject. (2) A note of interrogation may be appended to an ordinary statement. (3) Interrogative words, *e.g.* pronouns or adverbs, may be used.

324. (1) Questions of the first type may be either negative or affirmative in form, *e.g.* “Do you know this?” or “Do you not know this?” When affirmative in form such questions are open and no answer is presumed, but when they are negative the answer “Yes” is expected. In Latin the interrogative particle *ne* is used. It is attached to the first word of the sentence, which word if the sentence be negative is always *non*, so that *nonne* is usually regarded as a single interrogative particle.

Do you wish us to consider you from your boyhood upwards? *Visne igitur te inspiciamus a pueris?*

Do you not prefer to believe what is capable of proof? *Nonne mavis illud credere, quod probari potest?*

325. (2) Questions which in English are in the form of statements followed by a note of interrogation can be literally translated into Latin.

Then these gentlemen were to seek advice from aliens rather than from their fellow citizens? abroad rather than at home? *Hi igitur ab alienis potius consilium peterent quam a suis? et foris potius quam domo?*

326. English has no special form for questions which expect the answer “No.” Most often the form is simply the same as that of the open question, and the fact that the answer “No” is expected must be inferred from the

context. Less commonly such questions are put in the form of negative statements, with an interrogation added either by means of repeating the verb with a pronominal subject, or by a note of interrogation, e.g. "he cannot be coming, can he?" or "he cannot be coming?" Latin uses the interrogative particle *num*.

Does he know Latin? Is he of the sort and style of a juror? Does he understand our laws and customs?

Nuit. Latine scit? Num est ex iudicium genere et forma? Num leges nostras moresve novit?

You are surely not waiting for Lucius Metellus to give his evidence?

Num exspectatis dum L. Metellus testimonium dicat?

327. (3) For a list of interrogative pronouns and adjectives see § 338. It will be sufficient here to deal only with those which are likely to cause difficulty.

328. In translating the English interrogatives "who?" "which?" it must be remembered that where only two persons are concerned the Latin equivalent is *uter*, not *quis*.

Then which of us is the more greedy — I, who have not said all that could be said? or you, who have said it even against your own interests?

Uter igitur nostrum est cupidior?
Egone, qui, quod dici potuit,
non dixerim, an tu, qui etiam
in te dixeris?

329. "What?" is occasionally used in English where Latin has *quantus*, "how great."

What a shame, what a blot, what a scandal it will be, if Antonius is allowed to express any opinion in this Senate!

Quanta enim illa erit turpitudo,
quanta labes, quantum dedecens,
dicere in hoc ordine sententiam
Antonium!

330. "How?" when it qualifies adjectives or adverbs is *quam*.

Now you know what sort of man he is, and how well tried and dear he is to me.

Habes qualis, quam probatus
carusque sit nobis.

Mark in how anything but hostile *Vide quam tecum agam non ini-*
a fashion I deal with you! *mice!*

“How?” when it means “in what way?” is translated by *quomodo*, *quemadmodum*, *qua ratione*, *quo pacto*, more rarely by *qui*, *ut*.

And in what fashion did they come? *At quemadmodum venerunt?*

He asked in what way they left the *Percontatur quo pacto urbem*
city. *liquerint.*

331. The English interrogative adverb “where?” may be used to mean both “where,” “whither,” and “whence”; the corresponding Latin interrogatives *ubi*, *quo*, *unde* are never synonymous.

Where are they that assert that *Ubi sunt, qui Antonium Graece*
Antonius knows no Greek? *negant scire?*

The cavalry proved more useful *Magis utiles erant equites quo*
where I sent them. *dimissi erant.*

I am not asking you where you *Non iam quaero unde haec habue-*
got it. *ris.*

332. “When?” is *ubi* or *quando* in Latin, never *cum*.

333. “Why?” when it means “for what purpose?” is *quo*.

I am not asking you now where you *Non iam quaero unde haec habue-*
got it, but why you wanted so *ris, sed quo tantum tibi opus*
much of it. *fuerit.*

334. Double questions which give the choice between two alternatives in English have the interrogative *whether* followed by *or*, or the two alternative questions are simply connected by *or*. Latin double questions have *utrum...an*, *ne...an*, or are simply connected by *an*. The same rule applies to questions where there are three or more alternatives.

Supposing Priam had died while his children were still alive and his throne secure, pray, would he have left a world of happiness or of trouble?

Priamus si vivis filii incolumi regno occidisset, utrum tandem a bonis an a malis discessisset?

Did you abandon Lucius Domitius, or he you?

Vosne L. Domitium, an L. Domitius vos deseruit?

Am I to call such men Casca or Ahalas?

Hos Casca dicam an Ahalas?

335. In a double question consisting of two alternatives only, of which the second is merely the negation of the first (English, "or not," "or no"), *annon* or (more rarely) *necne* is used.

Do you mean that permission was given to Flaccus or not?

Utrum vultis Flacco licuisse, necne?

336. Deliberative or dubitative questions, which in English have the forms, *e.g.*, "What am I to do?" "Whither was he to turn?" have in Latin the verb in the subjunctive.

What answer was I to give to such a scoundrel?

Quid homini tam nefario responderem?

337. The following is a tabular statement of the usages of the interrogative particles, etc.:

	Direct.	Indirect. (See § 147.)
Single.	-ne (colourless) nonne ("Yes") num or an ("No")	-ne or num (colourless) nonne (rare)
Double.	utrum -ne (no sign)	utrum -ne (no sign)

an, annon

an, -ne, neene

338. Table of Interrogative Pronouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs.

Who? *quis, quisnam.*

Which? *qui*

Which of two? *uter.*

Of what kind? *qualis, cuiusmodi.*

How great? *quaytus.*

How little? *quantulus.*

How many? *quot.*

Which? (in order of number) *quotus.*

Anyone? (in questions) *ecquis.*

How? (with adjectives and adverbs) *quam.*

How? (in what way) *quomodo, quemadmodum, qua ratione, quo pacto, ut, qui.*

How often? how many times? *quoties.*

Where? *ubi, quo in loco.*

Whither? *quo.*

Whence? *unde.*

When? *ubi or quando.*

Why? *quid, cur, quare, quo.*

Why not? *quin.*

PART IV.

SOME LATIN CONSTRUCTIONS AND THEIR ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.

CHAPTER XXI.

THE ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS OF THE LATIN SUBJUNCTIVE.

339. A question which beginners in Latin composition often ask themselves is, “Am I to put the verb in the subjunctive?” In continuous prose it is not possible to look back to the worked example and so get an immediate answer, and the learner must think the matter out for himself.

The subjunctive may be required either in a principal or in a dependent clause.

340. In principal clauses the English indicative mood alone is never the equivalent of a Latin subjunctive.

In principal sentences the Latin subjunctive is required
(a) in deliberative questions, (b) in commands and wishes,
(c) in some hypothetical statements.

341. (a) In deliberative questions, for which see § 336, English employs (i) the verb “to be” followed by the infinitive, (ii) an auxiliary—“can,” “shall,” “must.”

<i>What am I to do?</i>	}	Quid faciam?
<i>What can I do?</i>		
<i>What shall I do?</i>	}	Quid facerem?
<i>What must I do?</i>		
<i>What was I to do?</i>	}	Quid facerem?
<i>What could I do?</i>		

342. (b) For the use of the subjunctive in commands and wishes see §§ 316-22.

343. (c) The equivalents of the Latin hypothetical subjunctive used without an expressed condition are the auxiliaries "may," "can," and the conditional.

This you may observe is the case with animals also.

Quod in animalibus quoque videas.

You might have seen Gracchus delivering an harangue.

Gracchum aspiceres contionantem.

I could have wished you had been here.

Velle adesses.

I should not like to assert . . .

Vix affirmaverim . . .

How much I should have preferred that he should have handed them over to me in chains!

Quam mallem vincos mihi traduceret!

Personally—and I would say it with all deference to Cato's accuracy—I should scarcely believe that the city developed so rapidly.

Ego—pace diligentiae Catonis dixerim—vix crediderim tam mature tantam urbem creuisse.

I should not find it easy to say how far I shall benefit the rest.

Quantum ceteris profuturi simus, non facile dixerimus.

344. In hypothetical statements coupled with a condition expressed in a dependent clause (conditional sentences, the English conditional mood is the equivalent of the Latin subjunctive.

If you came, you would find me here.

Si venias, me hic reperias.

Is there even a woman would lack the courage to slay this pestilent scoundrelly citizen, if only she had no danger to fear?

Quae mulier sceleratum ac perniciuum civem interficere non auderet, si periculum non timearet?

He would never have turned his back upon these outcries, had he not been hastening to some pre-meditated deed of crime.

Hos clamores, nisi ad cogitatum facinus approparet, numquam reliquisset.

*Hercules has departed to the gods.
Yes, but he would never have gone
thither unless he had wrought a
road for himself while yet among
men.*

Abit ad deos Hercules. Num-
quam abiisset, nisi, cum inter
homines esset, eam sibi viam
munivisset.

345. The difficulty of the conditional sentences is not a difficulty of mood, for English and Latin both recognise the difference between a categorical and a hypothetical statement, and Latin, as a rule, employs the same mood in the protasis (or dependent clause expressing the condition) and the apodosis (or principal clause).

The difficulty lies in the use of the tenses. The English conditional has only a present and a past, the Latin potential subjunctive has three tenses in common use—the present, imperfect, and pluperfect.

346. Hypothetical statements may be made with regard to the future, present, and past; *e.g.*,

(i) *I should do this (at some time).* Hoc faciam.
 (ii) *I should be doing this (now).* Hoc facerem.
 (iii) *I should have done this (then).* Hoc fecisset.

Latin draws a hard and fast distinction between the use of the present subjunctive which makes a hypothetical statement with regard to the future, which statement is merely a less positive form of the indicative or categorical statement with regard to the future ("I shall do this"), and hypothetical statements with regard to the present and past, which express what would be happening in the present, or would have happened in the past, under a certain condition which is not, or was not, fulfilled. English grammar makes no such distinction, but in statements referring to the present uses the present or past conditional indifferently.

If he were here, he would laugh. *If he had been here, he would have laughed.* } Si adesset, rideret.

Compare

If he were to come, he would laugh. Si veniat, rideat.

If he had come, he would have laughed. Si venisset, risisset.

Obs. 1.—The Latin imperfect subjunctive in the protasis or apodosis is used where the condition was a continued action or state in the past. Cp. § 344, Ex. 3. The first example above implies—*non ridebut quia non uelerat*, the third—*non risit quia non uenit*.

Obs. 2.—The protasis in conditional sentences is not invariably introduced by the conjunction “if.”

Were he here, he would laugh. Si adesset, rideret.

Obs. 3.—For a semi-potential equivalent of the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive see § 350 (end).

347. As if, introducing a conditional clause with no expressed apodosis, is translated by *quasi* or *si* preceded by *ac*, *quam*, *tamquam*, *ut*, *velut*; the verb of the clause is always subjunctive, but its tense is generally regulated in accordance with the sequence of tenses (§ 142).

Men who are spoilt by pride, live as if they condemned the honours you bestow. Homines corrupti superbia ita acetatem agunt quasi vestros honores contemnant.

The Sequani stood in dread of the cruelty of Ariovistus when he was absent, just as if he were present. Sequani absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horreabant.

348. On p. 146 is a table of the moods and tenses used in conditional sentences, present and past conditions being divided into those which are (i) actual or possible, and (ii) imaginary or impossible of fulfilment. In the first case nothing is implied in the sentence as to whether the condition has been or is being satisfied; in the second, there is a definite implication that the condition has not been or is not being satisfied.

ACRUAL.		IMAGINARY.	
<i>If you</i>	<i>Si tu</i>	<i>If you</i>	<i>Si tu</i>
1. <i>were wrong or doing wrong</i> errabas	<i>was or was doing wrong</i> errabam	8. <i>had been or been doing wrong</i> erravas	<i>should have been doing wrong or doing wrong</i> errarem
2. <i>did or have done or have been wrong</i> erravisti	<i>did wrong or have done wrong or was wrong</i> erravi	9. <i>had been or done wrong</i> erravisses	<i>I should have been or done wrong</i> erravissim
3. <i>had done or been doing wrong</i> erraveras	<i>had done or been doing wrong</i> erraveram		
<i>If you</i>	<i>Si tu</i>	<i>If you</i>	<i>Si tu</i>
4. <i>are or are doing wrong</i> erras	<i>am or am doing wrong</i> erro	10. <i>did or were doing wrong or were wrong</i> erravas	<i>should be wrong or doing wrong or were wrong</i> errarem
<i>If you</i>	<i>Si tu</i>	<i>If you</i>	<i>Si tu</i>
5. <i>(shall or will) do or are wrong</i> errabis			
6. <i>(shall or will) have done or been wrong</i> erraveris			
7. <i>should do or be or be doing wrong, or were to be or do wrong</i> erres			

349. The English auxiliaries of mood are not necessarily the equivalents of a Latin subjunctive.

350. The verb, "may" when used as a verb of incomplete predication is often the equivalent of the Latin *licet*, "it is allowed."

Themistocles might have lived a quiet life. So might Epaminondas. And not to seek instances in other lands and in remote times, so might I.

One may become famous equally well in time of peace as in time of war.

Licuit Themistocli esse otioso,
licuit Epaminondac, licuit, ne
et externa quaeram et vetera,
mihi.

Vel pace vel bello clarum fieri
licet.

When the power to do something depends not on persons but on things, "may" is rendered by *possum*.

Caesar might have finished the war in one day. Caesar uno die bellum confidere
putuit.

This use is common in the apodosis of conditional sentences.

Had he wished it, he might have been a king. Si voluisset, regnare potuit.

Notice that in such cases Latin employs the present infinitive.

351. "Can," "could."—i. In their proper signification of "ability," "can" and "could" represent the Latin *posse*.

Can there be bestowed upon man anything greater than glory?

Quid homini potest dari maius
quam gloria?

I could not possibly have held my tongue.

Tacere non potui.

The transports could not gain the harbour.

Onerariae naves portum capere
non potuerunt.

ii. And in colloquial English they are frequently used with the signification of "being at liberty," which strictly belongs to "may" or "might." In such cases *licere* is the equivalent.

You can go.

Licet eas.

Why did Phidias, as he could not inscribe his own name upon Minerva's shield, put into it a portrait of himself?

Quid Phidias sui similem speciem inclusit in clipeo Minervae, cum inscribere non liceret?

This clause we can either have added to the present decree, or we can have it kept separate and make it an independent document.

Hoc vel coniungi cum hoc senatus consulto licet, vel seiungi potest separatimque perscribi.

In the last example there is in point of fact no difference whatever between the force of *potest* and that of *licet*.

352. "Should," "would."—Strictly merely the past of "shall" and "will," these are used also—

i. In reported statements to represent "shall" and "will" of the direct statement.

He said that he would accept their submission and would protect them.

Sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit.

He learnt that the Nervii declared they would send no envoys to him, and would submit to no terms of peace.

Nervios reperiebat confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

ii. "Should" may also be used with an implication of duty, represented in Latin by *debere*, *oportere*, or a gerund or gerundive.

Just as one should be self-confident and not timorous, so one should be pleased without being exultant.

Ut confidere decet, timere non decet; sic gaudere decet, laetari non decet.

This, then, is a mistake which should be removed.

Hic igitur error est eripiendus.

We should be careful not to do anything base.

Videendum est ne quid humile faciamus.

By an ordinary idiom of the English language "should" is used in the first person of the conditional and "would" in the second and third person, and as a result difficulties and confusions arise, especially in conditional sentences. Cp.

If you were devoted to virtue, you should have avoided wrong-doing. Si virtuti studeres, vitium vitare debebas.

and

If you had been devoted to virtue, you would have avoided wrong-doing. Si virtuti studeres, vitium vitares.

This distinction could not be preserved in the first person.

iii. And similarly "would" may be used as a part of the verb "to will," i.e. "to resolve to," "to wish to."

Ask them what they would have. Quaerite quid habere velint.

iv. "Would" is frequently merely the sign of the Latin imperfect indicative in the sense of "was in the habit of." See § 138.

He would read something every day. Cotidie aliquid lectitabat.

353. The Latin subjunctive in dependent clauses. In English the subjunctive mood is for all practical purposes obsolete, and except in a few clauses which express purpose the auxiliaries of mood are not used in dependent clauses; so that generally speaking the indicative is the mood used in English dependent clauses, and the question arises when is it to be rendered by the indicative and when by the subjunctive in Latin.

354. In dependent questions, result clauses, and dependent statements following verbs expressing fear and doubt the Latin subjunctive corresponds to the English indicative. For these see §§ 145-9, 120-4, 114, 116.

Notice, however, that after verbs of fearing the English future is represented by the present subjunctive, not by

the future participle and the subjunctive of *sum* as in dependent questions:

<i>I am afraid that he will come.</i>	Vereor ne veniat.
<i>I should like to know if he will come.</i>	Cognoscere volo num venturus sit.

and similarly with the conditional, which after verbs of fearing is represented by the imperfect subjunctive.

<i>I was afraid that he would come.</i>	Verebar ne veniret.
<i>I did not know whether he would come.</i>	Non cognoveram num venturus esset.

In other dependent clauses whether the verb is to be put in the subjunctive will depend (1) upon the conjunction used to introduce the clause, (2) upon the meaning.

355. *Cum* is used in temporal, causal, and concessive clauses as the equivalent of a phrase involving the past participle. See § 27. In such cases it is always followed by the subjunctive.

In narrative, when used to subordinate a clause expressing one of two events which belong to the same series, where no special emphasis is laid on the connection or relation between those events, it is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

When it is implied that the second event happened because of or in spite of the first, it may be followed by any tense of the subjunctive.

<i>(Inasmuch) as this is so....</i>	Quae cum ita sint....
<i>As there was such a host of them discharging stones and missiles, there was no possibility of standing upon the wall.</i>	Cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulla.
<i>Although the fight lasted from dawn to the eighth hour, yet the men did nothing unworthy of themselves.</i>	Cum a prima luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant.
<i>Although he has written many poems, he is not a wise man.</i>	Cum multa carmina scripserit, non tamen est vir sapiens.

356. In adverbial clauses expressing purely temporal relations the indicative mood is used.

Antequam and **priusquam** are used with the subjunctive (of purpose) to denote that one action is purposely done before another can occur. In this case the English idiom usually, but not invariably, employs an auxiliary of mood.

I pushed on to Macedonia before they could hear of my arrival. Antequam de adventu meo audire potuissent, in Macedoniam perrexii.

Before the city gates could be closed against them, the Romans forced their way in. Romanus, prius quam portae urbis obicerentur, irrumpit.

So sudden was the affair that the enemy got across the Anio before the Romans could advance to meet them and prevent it. Adeo subita res fuit, ut prius Anienem transirent hostes, quam obviam ire ac prohibere exercitus Romanus posset.

And they will take the subjunctive whenever depending upon an imperative, or its equivalent.

Bid the Senate fortify the city before their victorious foe arrives. Nuntia patribus, urbem, prius quam hostis vicit adveniat, praesidiis firment.

I must clear up a few points as to this man's character before I begin my story. De huius hominis moribus pauca prius explananda sunt quam initium narrandi faciam.

357. Similarly with **dum** meaning "as long as," "until," when it is implied that the action expressed by the main verb is to be *purposely* continued so long as another action or state lasts, or until some event occurs, the subjunctive is employed.

Wait until I meet Atticus. Exspecta dum Atticum conveniam.

He waited at anchor to the ninth hour, until the remainder of the ships should arrive there. Dum reliquae naves eo convenient, ad horum nonam in ancoris exspectavit.

358. Causal clauses when not introduced by *cum* require the indicative in Latin, but the subjunctive is used when the reason advanced is conceived as that which presented itself to the person or persons spoken of (virtual *oratio obliqua*).

The Ubri urgently begged Caesar to come to their aid, alleging that they were seriously pressed by the Suebi.

He declared publicly that, as the Germans were said to be approaching, he should march on the following morning.

I do not at all agree with the people who assert that this question was not so much overlooked by Panaetius as purposely avoided, and that in fact it ought never to have been put into writing because, as they maintain, what is advantageous can never conflict with what is honourable.

They believed they could either peacefully induce the Allobroges—for these, they thought, seemed to be no longer loyally disposed to Rome—or could forcibly compel them to grant them a passage across their lands.

359. Hence, conversely, the special phrase or clause which is necessary in English to indicate that a given reason is not merely the one which presented itself to the writer's mind, but that which was present in the mind of a person or persons about whom he is writing, is in Latin got rid of by the use of the subjunctive.

He censured them very seriously because, as he put it, he had received no support from them.

Ubri magno opere orabant ut sibi auxilium Caesar ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur.

Loquuntur palam, quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese postero die prima luce castra moturum.

Minifae vero assentior iis, qui negant hunc locum a Panaetio praetermissum, sed consulto relictum, nec omnino scribendum fuisse, quia numquam posset utilitas cum honestate pugnare.

Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod non iam bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos ut per suos fines eos ire patarentur.

Graviter eos accusat quod ab iis non sublevetur,

Gaius Licinius Stolo was condemned to a fine of 10,000 asses, because, as was alleged, he was conjointly with his son in possession of 1000 rods of public land.

It is related that after gazing upon that countless host Xerxes burst into tears, to think that a doom so speedy hung over so many a thousand souls.

360. Hence, whenever a reason is advanced only to be rejected, this will be conveyed by the subjunctive mood, the reason which is accepted as the true one being stated in the indicative. Therefore after *non quod*, *non quo*, *non quia* the subjunctive is regular, because the reason which they introduce is confessedly insufficient or false.

I was fired with such desire to return, that no oars, no gales could please me; not because I fancied that I should not get back to time, but for fear that I might be later than I wished in tendering my congratulations to the commonwealth.

Marching thence, more because he could not endure to halt than because the road or the weather was tolerable, on the next day he encamped near the temple of Jupiter.

But, according to § 362, both the real and the unreal reason may require to be expressed in the subjunctive if in dependence on an accusative and infinitive.

And hereby one can understand that moderation is a thing to be sought after, not at all because it avoids pleasures, but simply because it attains to greater pleasures

C. *Licinius Stolo decem milibus aeris est damnatus, quod mille iugerum agri cum filio possideret.*

Ferunt Xerxen, cum immensum exercitum oculis obisset, illa- crimasse, quod tot milibus tam brevis immineret occasus.

Tanta sum cupiditate incensus ad redditum, ut mihi nulli neque remi neque venti satis facerent, non quo me ad tempus occursum non putarem, sed ne tardius quam cuperem rei publicae gratularer.

Profectus inde, magis quia manere non poterat quam quod tolerabilis aut via aut tempestas esset, altero die ad templum Iovis posuit castra.

Ex quo intellegitur temperantiam expetendam esse, non quia voluptates fugiat, sed quia maiores consequatur.

361. The concessive conjunctions *quamvis*, *licet*, *ut*, “although,” require the subjunctive.

However great be men's expectations, yet will you surpass them

Quamvis sit magna exspectatio, tamen eam vinces.

Dangers of every sort may menace me on every hand, yet will I come to the rescue.

Licet undeque mihi pericula impendeant omnia, tamen succurrarum.

Granted that this be so, what is there to be glad or proud about in the fact?

Quod ut ita sit, quid habet ista res aut laetabile aut gloriosum?

3. *Etsi* and *etiamsi* (“although,” “even if”) require the indicative (negative *non*, etc.) when matter conceded is regarded as a fact, the subjunctive when it is conceded merely for the sake of argument.

There was equal carelessness in the way they guarded their camp. Although their foes were so near, yet as a set-off came the thought that they were but the remnants of the two armies which had been cut to pieces but a few days before.

Par neglegentia in castris custodiendis erat. Nam etsi propinquus hostis erat, tamen reliquias eum duorum exercituum ante paucos dies deletorum occurrebat.

Even though he had been of the same date, what news of Pythagoras could ever have reached the Sabines?

De Pythagora, etsi eiusdem aetatis fuisset, quae fama in Sabinos?

Quamquam and **tametsi** are used with the indicative.

For the use of the subjunctive mood in subdependent clauses see Ch. XXII., and for its use in relative clauses see §§ 100, 121-4.

CHAPTER XXII.

REPORTED SPEECH (*ORATIO OBLIQUA*).

362. Reported speech is common to all languages, and as a rule (*e.g.* in Greek and German) differs from actual speech in so far as the verbs of reported speech are not in the indicative. English is exceptional in this respect: reported speech differs from actual speech not in mood, but in tense. In Latin the difference is both in mood and tense, for (1) the verbs of all dependent statements and certain questions are in the infinitive, and all other verbs in the subjunctive; (2) in normal reported speech the sequence of tenses holds, so that if a past verb introduces the reported speech all tenses are past as in English; primary tenses, however, are often used for the sake of vividness and clearness (§ 371).

363. English reported speech is as a rule clumsy, its use is confined to short and straightforward reports, and it is hardly used in literature at all. Ambiguities in tenses arise; the third personal pronoun is inadequate to the demands made upon it, *e.g.* it is impossible to report such a simple sentence as "I told him to go and see you"; also in reported speech the gerundial infinitive, which is the normal form of dependent command, cannot be used. As a result English reported speech is less common than Latin *oratio obliqua*, and what has normally to be done in Latin composition is to report in *oratio obliqua* English direct speech.

364. The difficulty with regard to the third personal pronoun is felt in Latin *oratio obliqua* as well as in English, but the fact that there are several demonstratives in Latin which can be used for the third person makes it possible to avoid ambiguity to a certain extent. The following uses may be noted.

Se and **suus** refer to the speaker or, if no ambiguity is caused thereby, to the subject of the clause in which it occurs.

Ipsum, ipsos, ipsius, etc., may be used pronominally to represent the first person where emphasis is required, or where the use of *se*, *suus*, etc., would create confusion, *i.e.* in a clause where, the subject being other than that of the controlling verb, it is necessary to use *se*, *suus*, etc., in reference to the subject of that clause. This does not of course affect the ordinary use of *ipse* as an adjective.

Is and **ille** may represent either the second or the third person of quoted speech. If both the second and third person occur in one sentence, *is* as a rule refers to the second and *ille* to the third.

The examples given below will serve to illustrate the use of the demonstratives in Latin.

To me, said he, the highest of all titles is that of commander, by which my troops have hailed me.

We will abandon our homes, nay, all Sicily, if ever Marcellus comes back here. In the old days he was merciless to us for no fault of ours; and what will he do now that he is angry, knowing that some of us Sicilians have been to Rome to make complaints about him?

They retorted, "The Rhine is the boundary of Rome's domains. If you think it wrong for us Germans to cross into Gaul without your leave, why do you claim that anything beyond the Rhine is within your domain and influence?"

If, said he, I do not dictate to the Romans the manner in which they are to exercise their own rights, it

Sibi maximum imperatoris nomen esse dixit, quo **se** milites sui appellassent.

Se non modo suam quemque patriam sed totam Siciliam relicturos, si eo Marcellus iterum redisset. Nullo suo merito **eum** ante in **se** implacabilem fuisse: quid iratum, quod Romam de **se** questum venisse Siculos sciat, facturum?

Responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire. Si **se** invite Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur **suoi** quicquam imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet?

Si **ipse** populo Romano non praescriberet, quem ad modum **suo** iure uteretur, non oportere **sese**

is not meet that I should myself be obstructed by them in the exercise of mine.

Not only have you betrayed Capua into the enemy's hands. You have betrayed to the tortures me and my garrison. You have withdrawn, as if turning your eyes away, to avoid seeing Capua fall before your very sight. If you will return hither, I and my Campanians will be ready to make a sortie.

I am convinced that, when he understands my demands, he will not reject my friendship or that of Rome. But even if he should be mad enough and fatuous enough to attack us, pray what have you to be afraid of? or why do you mistrust either your own valour or my watchfulness?

a populo Romano in **suo iure** impediri.

Non Capuam solam traditam in manus hostium, sed **se** quoque et praesidium in omnes cruciatus proditos. Abiisse **enum**, velut avertentem sese, ne Capua in oculis **eius** caperetur. Si redeat Capuam, et **se** et Campanos paratos eruptioni fore.

Sibi quidem persuaderi cognitis **suis** postulatis **enum** neque **stam** neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verearentur? aut cur de **sua** virtute aut de **ipsis** diligentia despicient?

365. The correct form of questions in Latin **oratio obliqua** is determinable only from the form of the same question in direct speech. Thus,

(i) A question which in direct speech is expressed in the subjunctive remains subjunctive in reported speech. The only change, if any, will be in person (according to § 364) and in tense (according to the rule of sequence, § 142).

What reason is there why we should refuse to leave Syracuse alone, exactly as if Hiero were alive?

Quam superesse causam cur non, perinde ac si Hiero ipse viveret, incolumes Syracusas esse velint?

(Here the *direct* question is in the infinitive, the *indirect* question remains subjunctive.)

Why am I to allow these troops to be injured that have done so much for me?

Cur vulnerari pateretur optime de se meritos milites?

(The direct question was *patiar*, deliberative.)

366. (ii) Questions which in direct speech are expressed in the indicative become in *oratio obliqua*—

(a) Infinitive if of the first or third person, being treated, in fact, exactly as an affirmative clause.

(b) Subjunctive if of the second person, altering of course to the third person, and, if necessary, in tense also.

Whence are we to find seamen if we have no money? And if we have no fleets, how can we either occupy Sicily or keep Philip out of Italy, or how can the very shores of Italy be secure?

If there is still war afoot in the province, what do we here amongst peaceful folk? And if the war is all over, why sail we not back to Italy?

Is there not yet before us the recollection of that night which was almost the last night of Rome?

Is it so true that the salvation of you all has lain in one man alone, and that nevertheless there is no help for him amongst so many of you?

That unsanctified law did not avail against the gods, did it?

What think you is the reason for making military service continuous?

Why have ye thus given way to womanish and idle weeping? Why not rather steel your courage to safeguard yourselves and your country together?

Unde, cum pecunia non esset, paraturopes navales socios? Quomodo autem sine classibus aut Siciliam obtineri, aut Italia Philippum arceri posse, aut tutu Italiae litora esse?

Si bellum in provincia esset, quid sese inter pacatos facere? Si debellatum iam, cur in Italiam non revelli?

Non obversatam esse memoriam noctis illius, quae paene ultima nomini Romano fuisse?

Adeo in uno omnibus satis auxili fuisse, nullam spem in tam multis uni esse?

Num etiam in deos immortales inauspicatam legem valuisse?

Quam putarent continuatae militiae causam esse?

Quid in muliebres et inutiles se proiecissent fletus, potius quam ad tutandos semet ipsos et rem publicam secum acuerent animos?

367. But a question in the second person, if merely rhetorical, and therefore in reality equivalent merely to a negative assertion, may be expressed in the infinitive, when dependent on a verb of saying.

When, pray, have you ever done battle against me? Ubi eum secum acie conflixisse?

368. The following examples show the manner of rendering in *oratio obliqua* various forms of conditional sentences.

Heaven never lays its own hand upon the wrongdoer; for it is sufficient if it equips the injured party with an opportunity for revenge.

If free opportunity to return to their homes be offered to those who have taken refuge with us, there is nothing to fight about. Otherwise, we shall make war upon him who prevents it, whosoever he be.

If (as is the case) we have passed by surrender not as slaves into your custody, but as freemen into your alliance, our city ought to be left in our own keeping.

If any of us had any money, it has been taken from us in the shape of war-tax year after year.

If you make war on me, you shall find by experience that it is one thing to attack Leontini, and quite another to attack Syracuse.

“I will give information as to the plot,” he said, “if I receive the State’s guarantee of my safety.”

Numquam deos ipos admovere nocentibus manus; satis esse, si occasione ulciscendi laesos arment.

Si iis. qui ad se perfugerint, tutus in patriam redditus pateat, nihil armis opus esse. Si ea non fiant, quicumque in mora sit, bello persecuturos.

Urbem suae potestatis debere esse, si liberi in societatem, non servi in custodiam, traditi essent Romanis.

Si quid cui argenti aerisve fuerit, tributis annuis ablatum.

Si bello lassent, ipsa re intellecturos, nequaquam idem esse Syracuse ac Leontinos oppugnare.

Dicebat se indicaturum de coniuratione, si fides publica data esset.

If I were to have been raiding Roman ground, it would not have been right to allow it. Similarly you Romans are in the wrong, in thus interfering with me in my own sphere.

Had you Sicilians already had an audience of the Senate, I should perhaps have expressed a different opinion.

In the case of a man like this it is nothing to the point to say that "even if he had tried, he would not have succeeded."

Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in Romanorum fines impetum faceret, sic item Romanos esse iniquos quod in suo iure se interpellarent.

Si iam auditii ab senatu Siculi essent, aliam forsitan futuram fuisse sententiam suam.

Hoc quidem in talibus viris quid attinet dicere, si contendisset, impetraturum non fuisse?

369. Relative clauses commonly require the subjunctive mood, but with one important exception, viz.—

Whenever, in direct speech, the relative is purely resumptive, *i.e.* whenever the relative clause is equivalent to a second principal clause coordinate with the first, such relative clause will in *oratio obliqua* be constructed as itself a principal clause in the accusative and infinitive.

Report says that in the vestibule of the temple is an altar, and that the ashes upon it are never disturbed by the wind.

The causes of all these reverses, they urged, lay with Sergius and Verginius; for so incredible had been their folly, that

Fama est aram esse in vestibulo templi, cuius cinerem nullo umquam moveri vento.

Omnium malorum causas in Sergio Verginioque esse, quorum adeo incredibilem amentiam fuisse ut

370. Commands in *oratio obliqua* are treated exactly as ordinary dependent commands in *oratio recta* (see § 97); *ut*, however, is omitted.

We cannot be compelled to give what we do not possess. Sell our goods and vent your cruelty upon our bodies, for these are all we have left.

Se ut dent, quod non habeant, nulla vi cogi posse. Bona sua venderent; in corpora, quae reliqua essent, saevirent.

I shall arrive at Salapia this very night. Let the men be ready, in case their assistance is wanted anywhere.

Cease wondering why no one ever mentions the interests of the common folk.

Suffer not your communities to lie unavenged.

Se nocte, quae diem illum secutura
esset, Salapiam venturum. Parati milites essent, si quo opera
eorum opus esset.

Desineret ergo mirari, cur nemo
de commodis plebis ageret.

Ne inultos imperatores suos iacere
sinerent.

371. Caesar frequently uses the so-called "vivid" form of *oratio obliqua*, which is clearer than the usual form, and also more lively. In this kind of report the tenses of the direct speech are retained throughout where the verb is in the subjunctive.

*Had I required anything of Caesar,
I should have come to him; and if
he requires anything of me, it is
fair that he should come to me.*

*If you are willing to lay down your
arms, make use of me as your
advocate and send your ambas-
sadors to Caesar.*

Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset,
sese ad eum venturum fuisse.
Si quid ille se velit, illum ad se
venire oportere.

Si ab armis discedere velint, se
adiutore utantur legatosque ad
Caesarem mittant.

372. The only safe plan to be followed in converting an English sentence into Latin in *oratio obliqua* is first to put the sentence into Latin in *oratio recta*, and then proceed with the necessary alterations of (a) the mood and person of the verbs, (b) the personal and possessive pronouns, and (c) the sequence, if this also requires alteration.

If the English sentence be itself in reported form, it will then be needful first to rewrite this in direct form. Unless this be done, confusion is almost certain to arise in the use of the pronouns employed.

Practice will soon enable the learner to adopt shorter methods, but the necessary skill can only be acquired by carefully following out the longer process.

CHAPTER XXIII.

COMPARISONS.

373. Comparisons. Of the two comparative adverbs *magis* and *plus*, the former is qualitative, the latter quantitative.

374. The adverbs *plus*, *minus*, and *amplius* may be joined adverbially to any case in the sense of "and more," "and less," "more or less."

The remaining space was 600 feet and not more. Reliquum spatium non amplius erat pedum sescentorum.

He had been ill for a year and more. Plus annum aeger fuerat.

It is said that over 2000 of the enemy were slain that day, and less than 400 Romans. Plus duo milia hostium eo die caesa traduntur: Romanorum minus quadrigenitis.

He had served as a captain for 30 years and more. Amplius annos triginta tribunus fuerat.

375. Where two *qualities* of a thing are compared, Latin idiom uses two adjectives, each in the comparative degree.

His triumph was more brilliant than popular. Triumphus clarior quam gratior fuit.

The Ligurians were posted in the centre behind the elephants, but their line was rather extensive than safe. Ligures in medio post elephantes positi, sed longior quam tutior acies erat.

376. The following examples should be studied:—

You have slain more of them than survive. Plures eorum occidisti quam quot supersunt.

It will be better for us to die than to live without either of you. Melius peribimus quam sine alteris vestrum vivemus.

You know that I no more use Greek when I am talking Latin, than I use Latin when talking Greek.

Scis me Graece loqui in Latino sermone non plus solere quam in Graeco Latine.

I prefer to go wrong in Plato's company rather than hold right views with such men as you mention.

Errare malo cum Platone, quam cum istis aliis vera sentire.

It were better to have died a thousand deaths than suffer such sorrows as these.

Mori milies praestitit quam haec pati.

377. A finite clause introduced by *quam* may be put into the subjunctive with *or* (rarely) without *ut*.

I can not go further than I find probability.

Ultra quo progrediar, quam ut veri similia videam, non habeo.

These kindnesses of mine I cannot better confirm than by adding to them.

Haec beneficia mea tueri nullo modo melius, quam ut augeam, possum.

See that you do not impose harder terms on him than he can endure.

Providete ne duriorem condicionem statuatis quam ferre possit.

378. "Too small," "somewhat large," "over-clever." —The comparative adjective or adverb frequently stands without further determination to express what is excessive or considerable:

Old age is by nature rather fond of talking.

Loquacior est natura senectus.

The approach of death proved rather painful and lingering.

Aditus mortis durior erat longiorque.

The same ideas may be conveyed by using *plus iusto, plus aequo*, or a verbal clause, e.g. *quam decet*.

379. In such phrases as "too good to live" the same implication of excess belongs to any comparative adjective or adverb followed by *quam qui* or *quam ut* with the subjunctive (see §§ 120-4).

The matter was too notorious to be concealed or disguised. Clarior res erat quam ut tegi ac dissimulari posset.

The Compromises had, in revolting, committed an offence too grave to be condoned. Campani maiora in defectione deliquerant quam quibus ignosci posset.

380. "The same as," "contrary to," "different from."—Instead of *quam*, *ac* or *atque* occasionally introduces the comparative clause. With *alius* and *similis* this is the rule.

They ordered them to turn Jove's statue to the East, contrary to what had been its previous position. Iusserunt simulacrum Iovis contra atque antea fuerat ad orientem convertere.

To me may seem right something other than seems so to you. Potest aliud mihi ac tibi videri.

There reaches me news very different from what you wrote. Longe alia nobis ac tu scripseras nuntiantur.

Let them avenge their wrongs in the same manner as I. Simili ratione atque ipse feci suas iniurias persequantur.

381. The same construction holds with the corresponding adverbs, and with *pariter* and *aeque*, and *secus*.

He treats me with the same friendliness and consideration as (if I were) his patron. Sic me colit et observat aeque atque patronum suum.

A man whose expression varied equally as did his moods. Vir vultu pariter atque animo varius.

382. "Like."—The adjective "like" is rendered by (1) *qualis* (correlative *talis*); (2) *similis* ("similar to"); (3) *par, compar* ("equal to").

He was a man of such kind that, had all others been like him, we should never have lacked an energetic tribune. Certe talis erat, quales si omnes fuissent, numquam desideratus esset vehemens tribunus.

383. The English comparative particles are “as,” “like,” “just as,” “just as if,” “as though.” The Latin equivalents are *ut*, *tamquam*, *non secus ac*; *quomodo* and *quemadmodum* (“in the same way as”); *tamquam si*, *ut si*, *velut si*, *quasi* (= *quam si*); *proinde quasi* (“exactly as if”); *perinde ac si* (“just as if”).

384. “As if,” “as though,” “just as if,” “as.”—Any comparative clauses relating to imaginary cases are necessarily in the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for the sequence of tenses. The Latin conjunctions in such clauses are *tamquam*, the various compounds of *si*, and especially *quasi*.

He always did so very carefully, as though he could see into the future.

Id semper, quasi provideret, seculo fecit.

What business had he to leave the city, as if he was not at liberty to squander his property here in Rome?

Quid attinuit relinquere hanc urbem, quasi bona comesse Romae non liceret?

He actually styles Trebonius a “scoundrel’s son,” as though we did not all know that distinguished Roman and knight, his father!

At scurrae filium Trebonium appellat. Quasi vero ignotus nobis fuerit splendidus eques Romanus, Trebonii pater!

But, say you, what he wrote won’t last. Perhaps not; but all the same, he wrote it as if it were going to last.

At non erunt aeterna quae scripsit? Non erunt fortasse; ille tamen scripsit tamquam essent futura.

Do we, within earshot of the cries of the combatants and the clash of arms, sit idly here as though we had neither hands nor weapons?

Clamorem pugnantum crepitumque armorum exaudimus resides ipsi ac segnes, tanquam nec manus nec arma habeamus?

385. “As,” “just as,” “like as,” “like.”—Any other comparative clauses, *i.e.* all that relate to actual facts, past, present, or future, are expressed in the indicative; and the Latin conjunctions may be any except those compounded with *si*.

The spot, as has been said, was some 600 paces away from the enemy.

Individuals excel in finding friends according as each has most confidence in himself.

He has brought war upon our country, surely as Helen brought it upon Troy.

Now as for you, we know you to be wise in another sense, not as the vulgar; but as the learned use that term; and like you there was one, we are told, in Athens, but none other in all Greece besides.

Locus ab hoste circiter passus
sescendentos, ut dictum est, aberat.

Ut quisque sibi plurimum con-
fudit, ita in amicitiis expetendis
maxime excellit.

Ut Helena Troianis, sic iste huic
reipublicae belli causa fuit.

Te autem alio quodam modo esse
sapientem, nec sicut vulgus, sed
ut eruditi solent appellare sa-
pientem, qualem in reliqua
Graecia neminem, Athenis
unum accepimus.

386. Idioms.—The two following constructions are alternatives for the ordinary usage of superlatives.

*He came as quickly as the quickest
(i.e. with all possible dispatch).*

*He was as wise as anybody (or a
wise man, if ever there was one).*

Celeriter venit quam qui impiger-
rimus.

Erat enim, si quis alias, sapien-
tissimus.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN.

SENTENCES.

[The following twenty-three Exercises correspond to the Chapters of this book.]

EXERCISE 1.

1. There was no talk of war or sedition while Saturn yet reigned on the earth. But the father of such a son as Jupiter could not long be left in peace; Saturn surrendered the kingdom of the world, and retired to a lonely cave.

2. News was brought to Caesar that Pompeius was only fifteen miles away; but, though unprepared, the resourceful general was not dismayed. He sent out two men of the tenth legion with orders to bring back word where his adversary had pitched his camp.

3. Alexander had no further need of a companion. Cocconas was a vulgar type of rogue, and was left behind on some pretext at Chalcedon, while the arch-deceiver returned alone to his native Abonotichus.

4. His services were splendidly rewarded and himself acclaimed as the "father of his country." The gods themselves seemed to favour the victorious general.

5. His position as emperor made it impossible that he should have a true friend among his subjects, but only too easy for him to have an enemy.

6. The final overthrow of Pompeius was not yet: several months passed before Caesar's bitterest enemy was finally struck down by the hand of the Egyptian Achillas.

7. Eating is necessary to life, but we do not live merely to eat. We must feed the mind as well as the body; and the proper food of the mind is wisdom.

8. How can a man be so foolish as to say that it is useless to study philosophy? Philosophy taught Marcus Cato to die nobly, and Marcus Antoninus to live nobly.

9. He is one who has no love for humanity, and pity is unknown to his stern nature. I warn you not to fall into his power.

10. His dictatorship gave Sulla immense power; but he used it only to destroy his private enemies, and to benefit the ~~Senate~~ state. In doing this he did not benefit the state.

EXERCISE 2.

1. Foresight rather than valour is needed for the successful conduct of a campaign. But sometimes it is well for the general to set a personal example to his soldiers.

2. It is not the quantity, but the quality of your work that I care for; read a little, but let your reading be thorough. Success attends perseverance, rather than cleverness.

3. An end was made of all the negotiations for peace: war was now the only possibility, and both sides began to do their utmost to prepare for it. Italy was split into two opposing camps.

4. Their plans I am counteracting day by day, I am hindering their violence, and thwarting their crimes. But I warn you; my consulship is about to expire.

5. He was the first to seize the importance of the principle that Rome's future lay with the army: and he devoted the rest of his time of office to increasing, as far as possible, the efficiency of the army.

6. These men's villainies are not of a moderate character, not such as are natural to humanity. They contemplate nothing less than massacre and conflagration and robbery.

7. Time strengthened the impression made upon me at first; and though I remained in doubt for several months, I feel now no longer uncertain.

8. I could write a long description of their dress and the ornaments which they wore; but I must not stay to do so. I will tell you about them another time.

9. I felt the extreme difficulty of my position, and how wicked I should be in doing anything contrary to established usage. I therefore held my peace, and waited to hear what he would say next.

10. He was astonished at the progress I had made in learning Greek; I could already speak with fluency, and read the easier authors.

EXERCISE 3.

1. We should have imagined that Rome would have strained every nerve to strengthen the force in Africa and bring the war to an end by a decisive blow.

2. Great exertions were made to keep the army a match for Hannibal. Yet, though the Romans put an enormous force in the field, the year proved to be one of the most disastrous in the war.

3. Syracuse took no mean part in shaping the current of Greek literature; the shepherds in Theocritus are, in the main, copied from those of Syracuse and its surrounding pastures.

4. The dusty, waterless plain pleased Aemilius very little, and he would have liked to retire to some more hilly ground; but Varro, angered by his colleague's hesitation, was resolved to fight.

5. The incapable Crassus was succeeded by the consul for the next year, Appius Claudius; he attempted to penetrate into Macedonia from the west, but he was no more successful in forcing Perseus to an engagement than his predecessor had been.

6. Cicero's hopes revived when he heard of Caesar's repulse at Dyrrhachium: he thought the day was not so far distant when Pompeius could assume again his former power, and the Senate again hold the balance of affairs.

7. It was settled that I should make my start in a chariot, which was to be waiting for me at about the ninth hour; and the anticipation of change put me in good spirits.

8. There are few of us who are not protected from the keenest pain by our inability to see what it is that we have

done, and what we truly are. Let us be grateful to the mirror for revealing to us our appearance only.

9. The Senate was fully alive to the situation; and it was only the absolute want of money which prevented the declaration of war in that year. They had a pretext; Perseus had attacked a petty Thracian prince in alliance with Rome.

10. It is to Pericles that the erection of most of the buildings on the Acropolis of Athens is due. The idea was his; but he left the execution to others.

EXERCISE 4.

1. You ought to return at once. There is a rumour that certain persons have sworn to murder the consuls and fire the city. It is very important to everyone that we should find out how many there are of them and what they are going to do.

2. Antonius was alarmed. He had lost the confidence of Senate and people, while Octavianus was daily growing more popular. In his anger and impatience Antonius made a violent attack on Cicero, who replied with the first of those famous orations which he called the *Philippiques*.

3. It was in vain that Caesar assaulted the strongholds of the Veneti, for so long as the Celts were masters of the sea they could get provisions or depart at pleasure, while it was scarcely possible to reach them by land.

4. The triumvirs tried to buy over Cicero. But Cicero dared not leave the senatorial party. He would never, he thought, be able to hope for any political honour again, and he was content to believe that he had at least the goodwill of Pompeius.

5. The magistrates soon afterwards convoked the Senate, which proceeded to deliberate on what the king had proposed. The opinions were many and various. Some believed that it would be to Rome's interest to disband her army and keep the money in the treasury; others called this merely a counsel of cowardice.

6. Philip intended to make Corinth his guarantee for the fidelity of the other Greek states: he called out the

leading men to a conference, and asked them how many cavalry the Corinthians could put into the field ; when he had obtained an answer, he kept this number as hostages.

7. Alone of the twelve Caesars, Vespasian passed away without a suspicion of violence, and alone of them, too, was succeeded by his own son.

8. You worship a living Emperor and despise the living gods ; but you have not yet gone so far as to set up ~~our~~ Emperor's temple in the Forum ; if you do, it will mark the end of you and your city.

9. Sulla set up those permanent courts, before which my client is being tried now : the law under which he is tried is Sulla's also ; but it was not destined to hurt those who, like Cornelius, are accused falsely under it.

10. I shall be in Rome before evening ; wait for me near the Temple of Vesta. I am writing in haste.

EXERCISE 5.

1. The condition of the besieged, in the meantime, was forlorn in the extreme ; not so much from want of food, though their supplies were scanty, as from excessive toil and exposure.

2. Croesus asked Solon whether he did not consider him the happiest of men. "No," replied the philosopher, "I know one man more happy—a poor peasant of Greece, who has but a few wants, and can supply them with his labour."

3. He who reads much learns much ; whatever books he may read, he draws from them some instruction ; however solitary he may be, he finds in them companions who are always interesting.

4. "Death is borne hardly by him who is too much known to others and too little to himself." This is a wise saying of an ancient philosopher, and one which I recommend you to lay to heart.

5. The true enjoyments of a reasonable being do not consist in unbounded indulgence or luxurious ease. Whoever would be really happy must make the diligent and regular exercise of his intellect his chief attention.

6. The Spartans gained great fame for their defence of Thermopylae, and a monument was afterwards set up in Sparta to commemorate their victory.

7. You have never treated the Italians as men like yourselves; they have always been to you subjects and payers of tribute, people who lived hardly in order that you might live easily. They will now take their revenge; beware of it!

8. Athenio had been a captain of robbers in his native Cilicia; he had been captured and sold as a slave in Sicily. He was therefore not unskilled in the management of men, and the movement he now led became powerful enough to make the Romans uneasy.

9. You are poor, they are rich; you have only to stretch out your hands, and all they possess is yours. Follow me, and not one stone of their Capitol shall stand on another; yield, and you will work in the quarries for the rest of your lives.

10. Here was a land rich in every kind of natural wealth; its pastures were magnificent, its climate temperate. Gold, so the natives said, had been sometimes found there.

EXERCISE 6.

1. One of us will not leave this place alive; the other must escape as best he may. But there are guards outside, and he will find that he cannot escape far: the enmity of him who dies will be satisfied even beyond the grave.

2. Immediately after the victory at Plataea and the chastisement of Thebes, the Greek army under Pausanias was disbanded. Returning to their own place, the Athenians commenced a second time to rebuild their ruined city.

3. In the *Aeneid* Vergil at length realised his early dreams of writing an epic.

4. The Senate, on the prompting of Nymphidius, declared Nero a public enemy, and sent horsemen to bring him back alive or dead. Nero was still alive as the centurion entered the cellar in which he lay dying by his own hand.

5. The Senate preferred anything to civil war; it could

not be brought to do Cicero's will by declaring Antonius at once a public enemy. Every moment was valuable. While the senate delayed, three armies might be preparing to enter Italy.

6. For the last three years the Athenians had been struggling with Aegina, without obtaining one decisive success. Here Themistocles found his opportunity, and pointed out the only possible remedy. If the Athenians wished to win, he said, they must enlarge their fleet.

7. Those who are born to serve will serve, whether their master be a king or a people; they will be courtiers or demagogues; and in either case they will pretend to govern those of whom they are in reality the slaves.

8. There is no greater vice than avarice; for he who is in the grip of it becomes a burden not only to himself, but to others. He keeps from others what he cannot himself enjoy, and is in fact a peculiarly odious kind of robber.

9. Otho secretly escaped. His troops were left to join Vitellius, who was thus the first Emperor to obtain his position by force of arms. He was not destined to hold it long.

10. Who was it who said that "to err is human"? It is surely far more human to think that others are in error when they are really right, and to forget that we ourselves are liable to error at all. Every man has a reason ready with which to justify his actions.

EXERCISE 7.

1. Collecting some eighty transports, a number which he considered sufficient to convey two legions across, he divided his remaining ships of war among his paymaster, lieutenants, and commanders.

2. Numbers of them were at once engulfed in the whirlpools. Many while trying to swim were borne under by the pieces of broken ice above them. Of the whole tribe only a few reached one or other bank.

3. Arriving at Plataea the Athenians found the men already dead.

4. Believing that the enemy were already defeated, he advanced towards the city.

5. Not having supplies, Caesar was compelled to cross the river.

6. Having thrown down the general's quarters and plundered everything that was there, the enemy advanced into the middle of the camp.

7. Drawing his sword and running forwards, he called to Manlius to come on.

8. The Romans, having captured eighteen ships and put the rest to flight, returned to Lilybaeum with much booty, won both on land and sea.

EXERCISE 8.

1. The letter in which you speak of the Campanian lands was handed to me on April 30, when I had already dined, in fact when I was asleep.

2. Some of his attendants traced the brigands' steps as far as the top of the mountain; but they wearied themselves to no good, and having got so far they turned back without having effected their purpose.

3. The death of both consuls without an engagement worth mentioning was an event which had occurred in no previous war, and it had left the state, so to say, orphaned.

4. Persons who were dispatched to pursue the fugitives seized them all at Tarracina and brought them back again. They were then led into the Forum, and with the approval of the populace were there flogged; after which they were flung from the Rock.

5. The confusion in the whole fleet was great, for numbers of the vessels had been damaged, and the remainder, having lost cables and anchors and all the rest of their tackle, were not fit to sail.

6. This was no easy matter for the populace. The war had taken away all their free yeomen, and slaves were scarce; their stock had been harried, their homesteads burned or ruined. Yet many of them bowed to the consuls' command and once more returned to their farms.

7. In the first watch the consul gave the sign to those in the citadel and those who had charge of the harbour, and making a detour of the port, took up a position where he could not be seen.

8. Finding wind and tide alike favourable, he gave the signal, weighed anchor, and moved forward about seven miles, beaching his ships upon a level and open shore.

9. The rush of his horse carried the monarch towards a tree, and striking a projecting branch he snapped off one of the two horns of his helmet. The fragment was picked up by an Aetolian, who took it to Scerdilaedus ; and the latter, recognising the crest, spread a rumour that the king was dead.

10. It was after the surrender of the force which was blockading Caulonia that Hannibal received intelligence of the siege of Tarentum. Day and night he hurried forward at full speed, but while still hastening to the rescue he heard that the place had been taken. "So the Romans too," said he, "have a Hannibal of their own."

EXERCISE 9.

1. The Pompeians after advancing from their unfavourable position halted on the top of the hill.

2. Before pursuing the fugitives Sulla came to the aid of the cohort with two legions.

3. Let us have an opportunity of meeting the enemy, of seeking our liberty by fighting.

4. Thinking that they ought to have a conference with Hannibal before making any move, they left the town by night under pretence of hunting, and set out to join him.

5. There was no doubt of the army's reaching the town ; and we could prevent the enemy from escaping.

6. Perseus, already bestowing his attention upon the war which had been planned during his father's lifetime, attempted to secure the good will not merely of the Greek tribes but also of the cities, by sending embassies and by promising more services than he performed.

7. Sending only a detachment to hold the Pyrenees, he

spent the remainder of the summer himself in bringing back the Spanish states to their allegiance.

8. On learning this, Caesar formed a plan based on the nature of the ground.

9. After receiving the letter, Scipio changed his plan and his route; he left off following Cassius and hurried to help Favonius.

10. Hannibal was afraid of advancing, but he could not prevent Maharbal from saying what he thought.

EXERCISE 10.

1. He sent forward Gaius Volusenus in a war vessel, with orders to enquire into everything and come back as soon as possible.

2. Yet before I begin to speak of the case itself, I make this one request of you, gentlemen of the jury. Suppose you have in your own minds already formed any opinion on the case, do not, if such opinion be pulled to pieces by my logic, shaken by my oratory, uprooted in fine by the simple truth, struggle to prevent this. Rather surrender such opinion with readiness, or at any rate with fairness.

3. When, in the course of the First Punic War, Calpurnius Flamma was leading 300 volunteers to occupy a hill amongst the enemy's lines, his address to them was, "Let us die, my men, and by dying save from blockade these legions that have been entrapped."

4. The desire to rule is driving into war two neighbouring states, two kindred peoples, but whether rightly or wrongly it is not for me to decide. That must be a question for him who has begun the war.

5. Is there anyone so mad as to imagine that this could happen if Publius Clodius had been alive?

6. On the report that they were coming to Rome, a lictor was sent to meet Carthalo, and to warn him by command of the Dictator to quit Roman territory ere nightfall.

7. What then remains? What have I that I can do in return for your benefits to me, save to esteem as my own your lot, be it what it will?

8. Surely, said he, you do not also bring me despatches from the Senate to forbid me to take the field?

9. It was decided that they should by their own choice select ten persons to go to the Senate at Rome, and no pledge of their good faith was taken beyond their simple oath to come back.

10. We appeal to yourself and to the Senate to take measures to relieve the misery of your fellow citizens, to restore that security which the law gives and which the misconduct of the praetors has nullified. Do not drive us to ask how we may most heavily avenge our lives and thereafter die!

EXERCISE 11.

1. Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus was at the plough when news was brought him that he had been appointed dictator. He was the dictator by whose orders Gaius Servilius forestalled and slew Spurius Maelius, when the latter was aiming at the crown.

2. That they are in the wrong gives them no pain; nay, they are annoyed at being reproved. Whereas on the contrary they ought to be vexed at their errors and to be glad of correction.

3. You are aware, gentlemen, that there were found some to maintain, when supporting this bill, that the murder had been committed by my client's hand indeed, but on the suggestion of some higher person.

4. Appius, who was headstrong in character, was of opinion that the case was one for the consuls to deal with. If one or two were arrested, he argued, others would keep quiet. On the other hand, Servilius was more inclined towards gentle remedies, and thought it both safer and easier to turn the excitement into other channels than merely to crush it.

5. Mindful of their gods, they fought with such obstinacy that, though night was likely to have parted the combatants, the king, in terror of their frenzy, desisted from the struggle even sooner.

6. Personally I do not recollect that I was unhappy

before I came into the world. If your memory is a better one, I should be glad to know what recollection you have about yourself.

7. This is, as you are aware, the old Socratic way of arguing against others' opinions, and in this way Socrates believed it possible to arrive at results most nearly approaching the truth.

8. This one conviction was firmly planted in the men of old, that sensibility continues even in death, and that on his departure from this life man does not so perish as to be absolutely annihilated.

9. We no longer feel any fear of this charge; we go in terror of your suspicions, yours, I repeat, Gnaeus Pompeius—for it is you whom I now address, and that in such tones that you can hear me.

10. Mighty is the power of conscience, gentlemen, and mighty in two ways: so that such as have done no wrong know no fear, and such as have offended imagine the penalty to float ever before their eyes.

EXERCISE 12.

1. Let us depart by any ship we may, though the choice will be left to you; but anyhow let us go, and by then we shall know what you are waiting for now, namely how matters have been settled at Brundisium.

2. Something has been done towards the suppression of piracy so far as the direct power of the Roman people extended, in the Adriatic and Tyrrhene seas; but we have for some time had a better scheme in our minds.

3. The battle was won, and Pompeius at his mercy. In a campaign of two months, Caesar had so broken up a great army, that less than the half of it had escaped with difficulty across the sea, and the whole of Italy had fallen into the power of the victor.

4. When to your great grief, gentlemen, I left Rome, did I fear that I would be put on my trial by Clodius, or was it rather, do you think, the employment of slaves, of armed men, of violence, that I dreaded?

5. We shall at once consult the senate—which you see

is being summoned—as to how we may best crush the rest of Catiline's army.

6. It may be questioned whether Caesar gained or lost more by the conquest of Italy. The fear of a revolution was felt by all who had any property; all thought Caesar would be a second Catiline.

7. You look at the universe as it exists, Timocles; you examine its movements, you believe they are caused by the ~~gods~~, and fly into a rage when some people do not agree with you.

8. Remember, when you go into the battle, that your cause is just; that the Romans are fighting to increase their territory and to satisfy their pride; but that your whole nation will perish if you do not repel them.

9. It is now sixteen or seventeen years since I saw the Queen of France; I saw her glittering like the morning star, full of life, and splendour, and joy.

10. I am inclined to think that no state is so happy as that in which the citizens of their own accord have a veneration for the laws.

EXERCISE 13.

1. You like a slave spent your manhood in a miserable school, while I served my country.

2. Caesar pursued Vercingetorix to Alesia, where the Gallic chief prepared to stand a siege.

3. Shall a husbandman carefully sow the seeds of trees whose fruit he will never see, and shall not a great man sow the seeds of laws, institutions, and free government?

4. The student of philosophy was ill-fitted for action, and Brutus at first refused to join the conspirators.

5. I will not praise frugality and at the same time go every night to a banquet myself.

6. What is so natural as for old men to die?

7. According to the ideas of that nation nothing is more disgraceful or unmanly than to use saddles.

8. To pardon is wickedness, to change one's mind is base, to yield to entreaty a crime, to pity a sin.

9. As the saying is, we were like drowned rats.

10. Adversity is not unprofitable.

EXERCISE 14.

1. Who could fancy that the gifted, energetic, popular, distinguished Philippus could be defeated by Herennius?

2. In less than three hours they had completed a rampart fifteen thousand paces about, and had begun to construct towers as high as the rampart.

3. The Druids' habit is to avoid fighting, and they enjoy exemption from service and universal freedom from burdens.

4. Who can possibly accuse of flight or cowardice the army which fought at Cannae, where fell more than 50,000 men?

5. His character was venturesome, crafty and versatile. There was no rôle which he could not play, no disguise which he could not assume. He coveted the goods of others while squandering his own. Desire was in him a burning flame. His eloquence was all that was requisite, but he lacked wisdom.

6. Such was the battle of Cannae, as famous as the disaster at the Allia.

7. Around him thronged an army of settlers from Arretium and Faesulae, a most motley crowd, varied by the victims of the Sullan period.

8. At that point I will also answer my distinguished friend Gaius Postumus with regard to the sums of money that were confiscated.

9. The whole of the booty was made over to the troops.

10. The town upon the top of the hill was captured by the new levies from Italy.

EXERCISE 15.

1. To guard the baggage he left the fourteenth legion, one of the three which he had most lately raised and brought up from Italy.

2. Every community in Greece and in Asia was concerned to learn how Eumenes and the envoys of Perseus had fared with the Senate.

3. For his own part, although it was a matter of considerable toil and trouble, he decided that the best course

was to have the vessels all beached and united with the camp by a single line of works.

4. Stirred by these womanish fits of passion, Tarquin went about and grasped the senators' hands, reminded them of his father's kindness, and begged them to show their gratitude for it ; he appealed to the younger men by gifts.

5. I thought that humanity bade me defend one to whom I was no stranger, no matter how suspicious the case might appear, so long as it was open ; but to attempt to upset the decision when once given I thought was shameful.

6. After wealth came loose living and greed and arrogance, and these fastened upon the rising generation, who plundered and squandered, played fast and loose with what was their own while coveting what was not, made no distinction between what was sacred and what was profane.

7. There are here men from Athens, in which city it is supposed that civilisation and learning, religion, justice, and law took their rise, and from whence they are supposed to have been disseminated over all the world.

8. Am I to uproot from men's minds a conviction so serious, so long and deeply planted ? That is not within my wit. It is for you, gentlemen of the jury, to come to the help of my innocent client in the matter of such a disastrous libel, just as you would in some destructive fire and conflagration.

9. Meantime the tax-collectors began to importune Casca to set aside a day for the debate, while the populace protested.

10. All influence and power, all office and wealth are in their hands, or where they choose. To us they have left only life's perils and disappointments, the cells, and starvation. And how long will you endure it, my brave fellows ?

EXERCISE 16.

1. To his high natural gifts had been further added the teachings of Scipio, under whom he had for many years past been thoroughly schooled in every branch of warfare.

2. All men who take counsel in cases where there is doubt should be free from hatred or affection, anger or

pity. When so clouded, the mind cannot easily discern the truth, and no man in the world obeyed the dictates of passion and expediency at one and the same time.

3. Ambition prompted this man to persuade his tribe that it was a simple matter to seize the sovereignty of all Gaul, seeing that they surpassed all men else in valour.

4. Men thus outlawed are regarded as unclean and accursed. They are abandoned by everyone and all men avoid their approach and conversation.

5. The slaughter went on in every part of the town, no quarter being shown to any adult who crossed the soldiers' path, until at last the citadel capitulated. Thereupon the order was at last issued to cease the massacre.

6. But if the heyday of our life enjoys with greater zest those pleasures you name, in the first place the things which it enjoys are paltry, as I have said before, and in the second place its pleasures are such that old age, even if it possesses them not in plenty, is certainly not wholly destitute of them.

7. So then only that which is self-moving never ceases to move, seeing that it can never be separated from itself.

8. Is there anything so circumscribed and brief as man's life even at its longest? And yet this is nothing to marvel at. It was only the other day that we used to have L. Piso saying he could not now find a senator whom he had in the days of his consulship invited to address the House.

9. If the legions were distributed in this fashion he fancied, he could most readily meet the scarcity of provisions.

10. The savages, divining the Romans' intentions, prevented them from landing by sending forward their cavalry—this being the style of fighting which they most affect—while they followed behind with the remainder of their forces.

EXERCISE 17.

1. These numbers were swelled by the common folk from the country, whom hunger and terror drove into the city from the fields, which the long continued war rendered both waste and unsafe.

2. He punished Acco in the traditional fashion.

3. Seeing that the struggle had been continued with the greatest recklessness and courage on both sides, he was unwilling by any decree of his own to lessen or to increase the burdens of either party. He accordingly appealed to both alike to desist from war, forget the past, and so end their quarrel.

4. At the entry into the Forum they began to fight, but with more ferocity than courage; for the Tarentines were no match for the Romans in bravery, in weapons, in military science, or in physical activity and strength.

5. And how rudely this glutton flung himself forthwith upon the estates of the hero whose valour had made the Romans yet more a terror to foreign nations, even as his just dealing had made them more dear!

6. But though you made little account of those evils, yet the government was strong enough and rich enough to make light of your carelessness.

7. We must all of us wish vainly for him, and regret him as a type of days gone by, more especially I myself, who esteemed him fully as much as I admired him. We came, you know, from the same part of the world, from neighbouring townships, and our estates were actually coterminous; besides all which, he was left my guardian and showed towards me all a father's sentiment.

8. On the death of the chief, he is succeeded by the person who wields the greatest influence, or by anyone who surpasses his fellows in degree. If there are several equally matched claimants, they compete for the chieftainship by vote of the Druids, or occasionally even by force of arms.

9. Numbers of the Gauls devote themselves to the service of their nobles when suffering from debt or the burdens of taxation or from the wrong-doing of their superiors.

10. Those who made their escape to Lanuvium the people of that town merely allowed to enter the walls and find lodging. It was a high-born and wealthy Apulian lady named Busa who provided them with food, clothing, and even money, a piece of generosity for which subsequently, at the conclusion of the war, she received the compliments of the Senate.

EXERCISE 18.

1. You actually assert that opposite to us and on the under side of the world there are people standing?
2. He carried off from Dium all the gilded statues, to prevent their falling into the enemy's hands. The inhabitants he compelled to move to Pydna.
3. This side of the island is calculated to be 800 miles in length.
4. Moving forward by night, he sighted the enemy's forces some twelve miles away.
5. In a cavalry battle the Germans frequently dismount and fight on foot, training their horses to stand still at one spot.
6. Subsequently they obtained knowledge of the enemy's plans by means of spies, and then, by dividing their attack, within fifty days they took forty-one towns, and every one by assault.
7. On the next day, and for many successive days thereafter, the throng of women at the gates, awaiting either the arrival of kinsmen or some news of their fate, was almost larger than was the crowd of men.
8. On the fifth of June came back from Africa the envoys who had visited Carthage after a previous conference with King Massinissa. Indeed they had obtained much more accurate information as to what had occurred in Carthage from the king than from the Carthaginians themselves.
9. For nearly three hours the fight lasted. Everywhere a fierce struggle, it was keener and more deadly still about the consul's person.
10. In this direction lies Ireland. This island, it is believed, is but half as large as Britain, although the passage to it is as long as that from Gaul to Britain.

EXERCISE 19.

1. The populace had squatted wherever some hidden valley or impassable swamp presented any hope of making a defence or securing safety.
2. Fortune so dealt with the two enemies in the keen-

ness of their rivalry that each protected and saved the life of the other, and which was to be accounted the more valiant it was quite impossible to determine.

3. Is there a man who lacks the courage to style these men his enemies, while yet acknowledging that their crimes have outdone even the savagery of Carthaginians?

4. In some curious way our minds have, as it were, a sort of prescience of the ages to come, and it is always in the loftiest temperaments and the greatest characters that this is most developed and most easily discernible.

5. But, say you, there is nothing left for an old man ever to hope for. I answer, so much the better off he than a young man. The one has already attained what the other only hopes to gain. The one hopes for a long life, but the other has already lived it.

6. One declared that the camp had already been carried, while another maintained that army and general had been annihilated and that the savages who had come were there as victors.

7. The Romans had but two passes by which they could escape. One of these was the pass into Thessaly through the vale of Tempe, the other that leading past Dium into Macedonia. Both were occupied by garrisons of the King's troops.

8. That some concession must be made all agreed; but whereas some considered that it should be to the King's dignity, others maintained that it must be to the glory of Rome, particularly as it was the King who had requested the conference.

9. To myself at any rate no reason suggests itself why the view which Pythagoras and Plato held should not be correct.

10. The enemy, who were thronging together and collecting from various points for the storm of the city, were taken off their guard and in confusion, and were put to flight.

EXERCISE 20.

1. I pray I may yet see the day when I shall thank you for having compelled me to go on living! At present I regret it bitterly.

2. Lay the blame upon the Senate; lay it upon the knights, who were on that occasion at one with the Senate; lay it upon every class, upon the citizens at large, provided you but confess that at that very moment we were hemmed in by your myrmidons.

3. Is it more remarkable that he was convicted, or that he had the courage to make any defence at all?

4. Would that I had said at Canusium, and in the presence of the army, the best witness to the valour or the cowardice of all, what I am now going to say in your presence! Or would that Sempronius at least were here! Had the men but followed his lead, they would to-day be our soldiers still and in a Roman camp, not prisoners of war and at the enemy's mercy.

5. Of what interest was it to Milo that Clodius should be killed? What reason was there why Milo should desire it, let alone do it?

6. So let the youngsters keep for themselves their shields and spears, their bats and balls, their swimming and racing, and leave to us old men amongst this multitude of pastimes only the dice and the knucklebones.

7. Was I to lie quiet and passive until my foes had armed and fought their way to Pella, to my very palace?

8. "Why not go," said he, "ourselves, with a few horsemen, to find out? With the facts before our eyes, our conclusions will be sounder."

9. Pray, what is the difference between one who counsels a deed and one who applauds it? Or what matters it whether I wanted the deed done or am merely glad that it was done?

10. Do not do away with all generosity. Do not esteem popularity as wrong-doing, nor visit with penalties the spirit of deference.

EXERCISE 21.

1. Let us fight the battle again in the same place and under the same conditions as we did before there was any mention of peace.

2. Before I begin to speak of those matters, I must say a few words on the art of declamation, which, though the most recently invented of all exercises, is by far the most useful.

3. We must remember that, though punishment is necessary, we must be merciful in our punishments; for a slave who fears everything will cease to attempt anything.

4. I have often lamented the first beginning of the Civil War; since, however, it was not open to me to belong to neither party, because I had many enemies on both sides, I decided to join Pompeius.

5. What should a man do who is left by his friends? Should he retire to a desert and complain of destiny? If he did this, he would show that his friends were right; for there would be something inhuman in him.

6. A little before they reached Leuctra, the Thebans halted, and pitched their camp. They were in high spirits, and believed that now at length they would be able to avenge all the wrongs they had suffered at the hands of the Spartans.

7. Deiotarus, as soon as he heard of Caesar's death, recovered his possessions with his own sword. He was a sensible man, and knew that it has always been legitimate for things seized by tyrants to be recovered by the true owners, after the tyrants have been killed.

8. As long as you remain in Rome, I will never visit you. I would rather listen to the brook that murmurs outside my small villa, than to all the orators in the Forum.

9. The wind was so great that the ship could not enter the harbour. As it drew near, it met a great wave, which drove it back a little way towards the open sea. The helmsman did not know what to do.

10. I might have left Rome, and lived a quiet life with you at Athens; perhaps I would rather be disputing with your philosophers in the Academy than be exposed to the envy of many men in the senate and the open hatred of Antonius. But I cannot do it; I am proud to say that I will not do it.

EXERCISE 22.

Put into *oratio obliqua* where possible:—

1. He warned them that they would be fighting with the same Macedonians whom they had defeated in the gorges of Epirus. The kingdom of Macedonia, he said, was preserved by its reputation, not by its power.

2. "The Achaeans understand well enough," said Quinctius, "that the bravery of the Aetolians is a matter of words, not deeds; and if anyone did not know before the reason why king Antiochus joined them, he has heard it now in the speech of their ambassadors."

3. He said that he would not leave Rome, though he knew that Clodius was getting together a band of assassins to attack him.

4. "We will go," he cried, "where the Romans cannot follow us. Our fields are laid waste, our forces scattered. Let us find a new home across the sea."

5. "Has any man heard even an enemy say such a thing? Was it for this that Cincinnatus fought and Regulus died, that a foreign army should occupy a land which was once ours, and that a Roman senator should bid us abandon it to them?"

6. My master used to say that to tell a falsehood is sometimes allowed, even to a wise man; and that the orator is compelled to appeal to the feelings of the judges, if they cannot otherwise be persuaded to favour his cause.

7. My friend told me that he would meet me near the temple of Vesta at the sixth hour of the night; that we could then carry out in safety the design we had formed.

8. "I cannot pay my debts," he said; "what are you going to do with me? If you kill me, I have friends who are ready to avenge me; if you imprison me, you will get no money at all: let me go free, and I will do what I can."

9. If he had known, he said, that Caesar was already at Ilerda, he would have formed a different plan. "In war," he concluded, "everything depends on the fidelity of one's messengers."

10. "In your minds," he said, "my deeds will be kept ever new, and they will be handed down by historians to posterity. The same period, which I hope will never end, will bear witness both to the enduring happiness of the city and the enduring memory of my consulship."

EXERCISE 23.

1. If all men were like Cassius, the Roman people would soon be free. He has more cleverness than Marcus Brutus, and a greater knowledge of affairs.

2. He treats me now no better than the other senators, though I have for so long been a partner in all his designs. But I have trusted him too much; and men are by nature ungrateful.

3. The soldiers were too far distant to be struck by the stones that were hurled at them from the walls, and little by little they disappeared from view.

4. There is nothing left us now but death. Let the end of our lives imitate, if not the fair hopes, at least the innocence, of the beginning. An honourable death is the only gift that those who have served a bad emperor can receive from him.

5. A man should always speak as if there were someone near him to take down his words, and should always write as if what he wrote were to be immortal. "Too great a task," you say: but if one does not attempt a great task, one will never perform a little one.

6. I should certainly like to see our good friend Trebatius, even though he is, as you say, quite despondent. Ask him to hasten; for he will find it convenient to see me before Caesar comes.

7. Not more than three hundred were left alive. The greater part of these fled to the pathless mountains of Illyria; the rest were overtaken by the Romans and cut down.

8. Contrary to what I told you, I shall be in Rome for the whole of this winter. I find the country less pleasant than I thought, and the noise of the beating waves is not so delightful to my ears as the shouts of the people pressing round the Rostra.

9. I delight equally in Latin and Greek poetry. If a man has something to write about, I do not greatly care in which language he writes.

10. I prefer to leave Rome than to stay here and serve our masters. Bibulus is doing all he can, and Pompeius, as I already told you, is very angry at his edicts against Caesar.

CONTINUOUS PASSAGES.

1. After this battle the Greeks sent out Pausanias with their combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont to expel the Persian garrisons from these regions. As on this expedition he enjoyed the same good fortune, he began to behave with more self-importance and to extend his aims. For when at the storming of Byzantium several Persian nobles, and among them some of the relatives of the king, fell into his hands, he sent them back secretly to Xerxes, pretending that they had escaped from custody, and with them Gongylus the Eretrian, to carry a letter to the king, the contents of which, Thucydides records, were as follows.

2. The native commanders ordered proclamation to be made all along the line that no one should leave his post; they must make up their minds to conquer, as everything depended on that. The antagonists were fairly matched in numbers and in courage. Our men, it is true, had been deserted both by fortune and by their leader, yet they had confidence in their own prowess, and whenever one of our squadrons made a charge great numbers of the enemy fell. Seeing this, the barbarian chief gave orders to his men to fight at long range, to fall back whenever the English made a charge, and to press on in pursuit whenever the English retired.

3. "Pausanias, the Spartan captain, has sent you back as a present the prisoners from Byzantium. On learning

that they are your relatives, he is anxious to form a connection with your family. For that reason he would like you, if you approve, to give him your daughter in marriage. If you do so, he undertakes to bring Sparta and the rest of Greece under your rule." The king was greatly delighted, and sent Artabazus in haste with a letter to Pausanias, in which he complimented him, and begged him to spare nothing in the fulfilment of his promises. If he succeeded, the king would grant him any request. 2

4. Alexander the Great, King of Macedonia, having conquered Darius, King of Persia, took a great number of captives, and among others, the wife and mother of Darius. Now, according to the laws of war, he might have made slaves of them; but in order to prove his virtue, he preferred to treat them as queens, and paid them the same respect and honour as if he had been their subject. Darius, having heard of it, said that Alexander deserved to be victorious and was alone worthy to reign in his stead.

5. No resistance was made elsewhere; but such a general panic possessed the whole army, that the rest of the horse fled, and all the foot threw down their arms before they were charged. The king begged those who remained to follow him; but when he had gone a little way, he found most of the horse were gone the other way, and that he had none but a few servants of his own about him. Then he sent to have the gates of the town shut, that none might get in or out: but all was confusion; there were few to command, and none to obey: so that the king stayed till very many of the enemy's horse entered the town, and then he was persuaded to withdraw himself.

6. When Hannibal set out on his march into Campania, Fabius was still at Rome; but the two new legions, which were to form his army, were already assembled at Cales; and Fabius, on hearing of Hannibal's approach, set out instantly to take the command. His old army, which had wintered in the camp above Suessula, had been transferred to his colleague, Marcellus; and a

considerable force had been left at the close of the last campaign to guard Nola. Fabius however wished to have three Roman armies co-operating with each other; and he sent orders to Gracchus to move forward from Apulia, and to occupy Beneventum; while his son, Q. Fabius, the praetor, was to supply with a fourth army the place of Gracchus at Luceria.

7. But the events of the last year of this struggle plainly showed what Rome would have to fear from a coalition of all the twelve cities. Two of the Roman generals were defeated: one was killed in the battle, and the panic spread to the lines before Veii, and even to Rome itself, where the rumour prevailed that the whole force of Etruria was on its march, that the camp before Veii was actually assailed by the enemy, and that the victorious bands might be expected at any moment to advance on Rome. So great was the alarm that the matrons crowded to the temples to avert by prayers and sacrifices their country's peril, and the senate resolved to appoint a Dictator.

8. On the same day the Roman commander threw a considerable part of his cavalry across the river. They surprised the enemy's foraging parties, and cut off a large number of baggage animals and men. When some divisions of light-armed troops were sent up as reinforcements, they skilfully divided into two parties, one to protect the plunder, and the other to meet and repulse the enemy's advance. One division, which had rashly charged ahead of the others and got out of the line, was surrounded and cut to pieces, while the horsemen returned to the camp by the same bridge without loss and laden with spoil.

9. THE FLUTE-PLAYERS.—I.

One insignificant event of this year I should have omitted, had it not seemed to have some bearing upon religion. The flute-players took offence because the censors of the year before had forbidden them to have their meals in the temple of Jupiter, a custom which had been handed

down from antiquity. They withdrew in a body to Tibur, with the result that there was no one left in the city to play the prelude at the sacrifices. The Senate therefore sent a deputation to Tibur begging the citizens to take steps for the restoration of the delinquents to the Romans. The Tiburtines civilly promised to do so, and began by summoning them to the senate-house and urging them to return to Rome. As they could not be prevailed upon, the Tiburtines employed a device which seemed to fit in well with the musical temperament.

10. THE FLUTE-PLAYERS.—II.

On a holiday they were invited to several houses on the pretext of banquets which required music. They were then plied with wine, of which musicians are as a rule fond, and put to sleep. In this manner the Tiburtines threw them into waggons and conveyed them to Rome, and they knew nothing till the waggons were left in the market place, and dawn surprised them in their state of intoxication. The citizens flocked together and begged them to remain, and such as performed at the sacrifices had the right of taking their meals in the temple restored to them.

11. The combat was speedily decided. The elephants, thrown into confusion by the first discharge of stones and arrows, turned upon the ranks they were placed to cover, and broke in pieces their array. Scipio's legionary force made little resistance; their camp was close in the rear, and they were content to seek shelter behind the entrenchments. Deserted by their officers, they looked in vain for a leader to direct the defence of their ramparts. No one had been left in command of their camp. The fugitives, seized with panic terror, threw away their arms, and betook themselves to the Numidian encampment near at hand.

12. The beginning of the following year saw the revolt of Mytilene. The news was received with incredulity by the Athenians, who were all but crushed by the plague and harassed by the repeated invasions of the Spartans.

But when confirmation of the tidings left no room for doubt that they were threatened by a new and unexpected danger, a blaze of indignation ensued. Their allies had seized the moment when they fancied Athens was tottering to its fall to revolt to the enemy. If this example were followed, what hope of success remained? How could the state continue the struggle against overwhelming odds?

13. As the sun rose, the general gave the signal to advance. The road lay through lofty mountains and deep valleys, where it was easy for an enemy to set an ambush for the unwary. But the veteran general, long experienced in war, had thought of this and had sent forward scouts to ascertain the position of the enemy's camp. As no enemy appeared, the soldiers soon began to grumble at the orders of the general to march in close order: "For," said they, "the enemy does not expect us to march in this direction and we are in no danger from an ambuscade."

14. All the chief women came and besought him with tears that he would not destroy his own city. And when he would have kissed his mother, Volumnnia said to him, "Answer me this first. Am I the mother of Caius Marcius, or a prisoner in the hands of the leader of the Volscians? If I had not been a mother, my country had still been free." Then Coriolanus was moved, and he turned himself with tears to his mother and said, "Mother, thou hast saved Rome, but thou hast lost thy son."

15. My lads, you must all have observed this day, as well as myself, the great increase of the enemies' force, and the threatening position they have assumed. I have on various grounds strong reason to believe they will attack us to-night. I do not wish to conceal our real state, because I think there is not a man here who is afraid to face any sort of danger. We are now strongly fenced in and our position is in all respects so good, that, armed as we are, we ought to make a formidable defence even against regular troops.

16. Dionysius' condition seemed desperate. Blockaded by sea and land, with a people impatient of his despotism; with a force of mercenaries who, the moment that he became unable to pay them, might betray him either to the enemy without the walls or to his political adversaries within, he held a council with his friends in the citadel, and expressed his purpose of leaving Syracuse to its fate and attempting to effect his own escape by sea. One of them boldly answered, "A king's robe is a noble winding-sheet." At these words the spirit of Dionysius rose within him, and he resolved to live or die a king.

17. He asked both of them, as they had brought Pompeius' orders to him, not to consider it a burden to convey his requests to Pompeius. An honourable position had always been his first aim and dearer than life itself, yet for the sake of the country he had calmly borne the sacrifice of his office. New troops were being enrolled throughout Italy, two legions which had been withdrawn from him on the pretence of the Parthian war were kept back, the citizens had armed. "What is the object of it all," he asked, "unless it be my destruction? Yet I am ready to make any concessions. Let Pompeius go to his provinces, all parties in Italy lay down their arms, let there be no more intimidation, let the elections be free and the whole government be put in the hands of the senate and people of Rome."

18. The Greeks, finding they could not take the town by force, devised this plan. They made a great horse and shut up in its body a number of armed men: after which, in order that the Trojans might think that the siege was abandoned, they retired to their ships: and the Trojans, believing that the Greeks had actually departed, brought the horse into their town. But in the middle of the night the men concealed in it got out, set fire to the city, opened the gates, and let in the Grecian army. The Greeks destroyed the city and killed almost all the inhabitants; only a very few saved themselves by flight.

19. Cosimo was now, in fact, master of Florence, though in law he was still a private citizen, whose power, based solely and wholly on his personal influence, might fail at any moment. Therefore he set to work to consolidate it, by a method as novel as it was sagacious. He brought about the creation of a council, empowered to elect magistrates for a term of five years. Composed of citizens devoted to himself, this council secured his position for a long time, and by having his power renewed every five years in the same manner he was enabled to continue master of the Republic, without ever holding any public office or discarding the semblance of a private citizen. This did not, however, prevent him from occasionally having recourse to bloodshed. Under his policy all the old Florentine institutions were reduced to empty names.

20. Meanwhile Clodius was aware—and indeed it was quite easy for him to be so—that, as Milo was dictator at Lanuvium, he had to undertake a journey thither on the 18th of January to appoint a priest. The journey was an annual occurrence, was required by law, and was inevitable. Clodius therefore himself left Rome quite suddenly with the intention, as the event proved, of laying a trap for Milo in front of his villa; nay more, so sudden was his departure that he failed to attend a disorderly public meeting, where his violence was much missed. Milo however was in the Senate till the House adjourned; he then went home, changed his shoes and his clothes, waited some little time, as usually happens, while his wife was getting ready, and then started at an hour by which Clodius could have reached Rome if he had really meant to come that day.

21. Nevertheless it was a hotly contested day. On the right wing of the Romans, where Rullianus with his two legions contended with the Samnite army, the conflict remained long undecided. On the left, which Publius Decius commanded, the Roman cavalry was thrown into confusion by the Gallic war chariots, and there the legions already began to give way. Then the consul called to him

Marcus Livius the priest, and bade him devote to the infernal gods both the head of the Roman general and the army of the enemy; and plunging into the thickest throng of the Gauls he sought death and found it. This heroic deed of despair in so distinguished a man and so beloved a general was not in vain.

22. When he saw Andromache's obstinate refusal to her lover's importunities, he whispered me in the ear that he was sure she would never have him; to which he added, with a more than ordinary vehemence, "You cannot imagine, sir, what it is to have to do with a widow." Upon Pyrrhus threatening afterwards to leave her, the knight shook his head and muttered to himself, "Ay, do if you can." This part dwelt so much upon my friend's imagination, that at the close of the third Act, as I was thinking of something else, he whispered in my ear, "These widows, sir, are the most perverse creatures in the world."

23. Tacitus drew his materials, for the most part, from writers bitterly hostile to Tiberius, who exaggerated his faults, misinterpreted his motives, and recklessly adopted any story, however baseless, which agreed with their view of his character. It must be remembered that it was in Rome, and in his relations with Roman society, that Tiberius was seen at his worst. Yet beyond these narrow limits neither Tacitus nor his authorities cared to cast more than a passing glance. Tiberius was not a lovable man; he was morose and suspicious, and suspicion, as it increased its hold upon him, made him in his later years a terror to all who could be suspected of treason. Yet there is no doubt that he was a capable and vigorous ruler, and that the empire fared well under his care.

24. The Romans, knowing that their army was in face of the enemy, and that the consuls had been ordered no longer to decline a battle, were for some days in the most intense anxiety. Every tongue was repeating some line of old prophecy; every temple was crowded with supplicants:

incense and sacrifices were offered on every altar. At last the tidings arrived of the utter destruction of both the consular armies, and of a slaughter such as Rome had never before known. It must have been true, without exaggeration, that every house in Rome was in mourning.

25. Since we last sat on these seats, our ears have heard strange words. When the English told us they had conquered you, we always thought that they lied; but now we have learned that they spoke the truth. We have learned that you, whom we have loved and served so well, have given the lands that we dwell upon to your enemies and ours. We have learned that the English have forbidden you to send traders to our villages to supply our wants; and that you, whom we thought so great and brave, have obeyed their commands like women, leaving us to starve and die in misery. We now tell you once for all that our lands are our own; and we tell you moreover that we can live without your aid, and hunt, and fish, and fight as our fathers did before us.

26. Clitus, forgetting all prudence, sternly rebuked their flattery of Alexander, and did not hesitate to extol more highly the exploits of Philip. He reminded Alexander of his former services, and stretching forth his hand exclaimed, "It was this hand, Alexander, which saved your life at the battle of the Granicus." The king, who was heated with wine, was so enraged by these remarks, that he rushed at Clitus with the intention of killing him on the spot, but he was held back by his friends, whilst Clitus was at the same time hurried out of the house.

27. Next year the Peloponnesians again invaded Attica, and extended their devastations as far as Laurium. But the Athenians concerned themselves less with this invasion: they had to contend with a more awful enemy within the walls of their city. The plague had broken out. Thucydides, who was stricken down himself, gives a terrible account of its ravages and the demoralisation which it

produced in Athens. The dead lay unburied, the temples were full of corpses, and the funeral customs were forgotten or violated. Dying wretches were gathered about every fountain, seeking to relieve their unquenchable thirst. Men remembered an old oracle which said that "a Dorian war will come and a plague therewith."

28. The unfortunate chieftain saw himself daily stripped of power and his ranks rapidly thinning around him. Some were won over by the whites ; others fell victims to hunger and fatigue, and to the frequent attacks by which they were harassed. His stores were all captured ; his chosen friends were swept away from before his eyes ; his sister was carried into captivity ; and in one of his narrow escapes he was compelled to leave his beloved wife and only son to the mercy of the enemy. His own followers began to plot against his life, that by sacrificing him they might purchase dishonourable safety. The measure of his misfortunes thus appeared to be full to overflowing.

29. The concerted attack was, however, at first a failure. Lepidus was in no hurry to assist his powerful colleague, and a gale obliged Octavius to seek shelter at Lipara. Leaving his fleet there, he returned to Italy ; and putting his legions on board the Antonian squadron, which had reached the straits of Messina, he landed at Tauromenium. But here he was instantly attacked by Sextus Pompeius. Once more it was said his courage failed him, and he sought safety on the mainland. The legions which he had deserted were now harassed on all sides by the light troops of Sextus. Their supplies began to run short, and they were helpless before the attacks of an enemy who obstinately refused to come to close quarters. As a last resource their leader, Cornificius, resolved to force his way across the island, to effect, if possible, a junction with Agrippa.

30. Caesar was more and more weary of it. He knew that the Senate hated him ; he knew they would kill him, if they could. He was willing to live, if they would let him live ; but, for himself, he had ceased to care about it. He

disdained to take precautions against assassination. On his first return from Spain, he had been attended by a guard; but he dismissed it in spite of the remonstrances of his friends, and went daily into the Senate-house alone and unarmed. He spoke often of his danger with entire openness; but he seemed to think that he had some security in the certainty that if he was murdered the Civil War would break out again.

31. A body of Roman cavalry had been defeated by the Cimbrians at the river Athesis and were flying panic-stricken towards Rome, having deserted the proconsul Q. Catulus. The son of Scaurus was one of the runaways. His father therefore sent a messenger to tell him, that he would rather have found his dead body on the field of battle than see him back again under the slur of that disgraceful flight; and therefore, degenerate son that he was, he had better keep out of the sight of his incensed father. The young man, when he heard the message, unable to bear the shame, turned against his own breast the sword that he had failed to use against the foe, and died by his own act.

32. When the news of this disaster reached Rome, the Senate refused to ratify the peace, and resolved that the two Consuls and all the officers who had sworn to the peace should be delivered up to the Samnites as persons who had deceived them. They were conducted to Caudium by a Fetialis; and when they appeared before the tribunal of C. Pontius, Postumius struck the Fetialis with his foot, saying that he was now a Samnite citizen, and that war might be renewed with justice by the Romans, since a Samnite had insulted the sacred envoy of the Roman people. But Pontius refused to accept the persons who were thus offered, and told them, if they wished to nullify the treaty, to send back the army to the Caudine Forks.

33. But Marcellus did not shrink from the undertaking. His forces had to cross two streams each about two hundred feet broad. Accordingly he caused bridges to be made, marched his army across by night, and forth-

with began the siege of the town. The commander of the garrison, however, summoned the whole body of the citizens to meet him in the market-place, and in a long harangue encouraged them to withstand the enemy as long as possible. They knew, he said, what sort of enemies the Romans were: when they captured a town they spared neither young nor old. What then could they look for but death at their hands? And if they must die, let them perish fighting bravely rather than yield like cowards to their cruel foe. Encouraged by these brave words the citizens made a sortie, burnt the Roman camp, and compelled Marcellus reluctantly to retire.

34. In addressing the people he was fairly prudent; he glanced at the treachery of his friends, but he did not make too much of it. He praised his own good qualities, but not extravagantly. He described Pompey as "the wisest, best, and greatest of all men that had been, were, or ever would be." Himself he compared to Marius returning also from undeserved exile, and he delicately spoke in honour of a name most dear to the Roman plebs. But he, he said, unlike Marius, had no enemies but the enemies of his country. He had no retaliation to demand for his own wrongs. His first and his last object would be to show his gratitude to his fellow citizens.

35. My language, too, is unpolished. I reck little of that: Virtue shines by its own light. It is they, my adversaries, who need the trick of eloquence to hide their vile acts. I never learnt Greek. Why, truly I had little inclination to get that kind of learning, which had done so little towards making its teachers honest men. But I have learnt other accomplishments far more serviceable to the state: to smite the foemen, to mount guard, to dread nothing except dis-honour, to bear heat and cold alike, to sleep on the bare ground, and to endure at the same time hunger and fatigue.

36. The town was strong, and powerfully garrisoned. To storm it was thought impossible; and the store of

provisions within the walls would last till the winter, when the besieging army would be driven from the field. The herald was told scornfully that he might take his proclamation to those from whom it came—the soldiers of Duren knew no reading; he pretended to come from the Emperor: the Emperor had fed the fishes of the Mediterranean when he was seeking to return from Algiers, and from him they had nothing to fear. Before forty-eight hours had expired, they found reason to know that neither was Duren impregnable nor the Emperor a delusion. The second morning after their reply, the Spaniards were led up to the walls, and after a struggle of three hours the garrison broke and fled. Seven hundred were killed. The rest, attempting to escape on the other side of the town, fell into the hands of the Prince of Orange. Charles, coolly merciless, refused to spare a man who had borne arms against him. The commander was hanged before the gates: the other prisoners were variously executed.

37. The dissolution of Parliament resulted in want of money to pay the soldiers; and, as Richard was not strong enough to levy taxes as Oliver had done, a Parliament of some kind was necessary. Accordingly the army, acting on Lambert's advice, restored the members of the Long Parliament who had been dismissed by Cromwell in 1653, an arrangement in which Richard Cromwell acquiesced. In the restored Rump the old Commonwealth men, Vane and Bradshaw, were supreme. They were bent on restoring a Republic, and after making provision for the payment of Richard Cromwell's debts they insisted on his leaving Whitehall.

38. Otho awaited the result at Brixellum, guarded by some divisions of the praetorians. The defeat at Cremona was not in itself necessarily decisive of the war. He had still every chance of retrieving his fortunes, with the help of the approaching legions from Illyricum. But he was weary of the uncertainty, and when the news of defeat came he made up his mind to die. In the evening he called for two daggers, of which he chose the sharper

and placed it beneath his pillow. Having slept for some hours, he drew forth the weapon at daybreak and fell upon it. His dying groan was heard, and when his slaves rushed in they found their master dead.

39. The news of the crime was soon spread through the whole of the country. Adherbal was forced by panic to arm in his own defence, and most of those who remained loyal to the memory of Micipsa gathered to the standard of the legitimate heir. But Jugurtha's fame among the fighting men of the kingdom stood him in good stead. His adherents were the fewer in number, but they were the more effective warriors. He rapidly gathered such forces as were available, and dashed from city to city, capturing some by storm, and receiving the voluntary submission of others. He had plunged boldly into a civil war, and by his action declared the coveted prize to be nothing less than the possession of the whole Numidian kingdom.

40. When their princes are dead, they lay them on a piece of wood or stone, and make a fire about the same which may not burn them, but by degrees draws forth all the moisture in sweat, leaving only the skin and bones, and then put them to rest in a separate place with the ancestors which before had been so dealt with. If any die in battle, or so that they cannot recover his body, they compose songs, which the children learn touching him and the manner of his death, to supply a memorial. As for letters, they were so ignorant that, seeing the intercourse of the Spaniards by letters, they thought that letters could speak, and were very cautious in their carriage of them, lest the letters might accuse them of ill-demeanour by the way. When they will disport themselves, the men and women meet and take each other by the hand, and one goeth before what is called Tequina or their master, singing in a low voice what cometh to his mind, and after him all the multitude answereth in a higher voice, and so continue they three or four hours.

41. The general then mounted a horse which was led by one of his attendants and rode on to view the scene of his victory, which was more decisive than even his hopes had anticipated. Of the enemy fully one half fell in the battle or in the flight. They had been chiefly driven back upon that part of the plain which bordered on the lake, so that there was no free opening either for retreat or escape. Several hundreds were forced into the lake and drowned. Of the survivors, about one half escaped by swimming or by an early flight along the left bank of the lake. Arms, ammunition, standards, and baggage all became the spoil of the conquerors.

42. The following night was spent by the Persians under arms, for their camp was unfortified and they feared a night attack. And a night attack was recommended by Parmenio, but Alexander preferred to trust to his own generalship and the superior discipline of his own troops, and not to brave the hazards of a struggle in the dark. He said to Parmenio, "I do not steal victory," and under the gallantry of this reply he concealed, in his usual manner, the prudence of his judgment. A victory over the Persian host, won in the open field in the light of day, would have a far greater effect in establishing his fame in Asia than an advantage stolen by night.

43. L. Quinctius Cincinnatus tilled his own little farm beyond the Tiber. The deputies of the Senate came thither early in the morning and found him digging in his field. And when he had sent to fetch his toga, and was now in fit guise to hear the message of the Senate, they hailed him dictator, and told him in what peril the consul and his army lay. So he went with four-and-twenty lictors before him to his house in Rome and chose L. Tarquitius, a brave man but poor, to be master of the horse. On that day the dictator made all business to cease in the Forum and summoned all who could bear arms to meet in the Field of Mars before sunset, ordering each man to bring with him victuals for five days and twelve wooden stakes. So at nightfall when everything

was in readiness, the dictator marched with all speed to Mount Algidus.

44. He soon had the pleasure of fighting the king of the island of Cyprus, because he allowed his subjects to pillage some of the English troops who were shipwrecked on the shore; and easily conquering this poor monarch, he seized his only daughter, and put the king himself into silver fetters. He then sailed away again with his mother, sister, wife, and the captive princess, and soon arrived before a certain town, which the French king was besieging with his fleet. This king's army, however, had been wasted by the plague and thinned by the swords of the enemy, whose numerous army was at that time gallantly defending the place. The English and French kings were jealous of each other, and discord also reigned between the disorderly and violent soldiers of the two nations. Hence they could not at first agree to make the assault; but when they did, the enemy promised to yield the town.

45. Their zeal for liberty made the citizens despise the distresses occasioned by the scarcity of provisions, and supported them long under all the miseries of famine. Montuc, by his example, brought his soldiers to vie with him in patience and abstinence; and it was not until they had withstood a siege of ten months, and were reduced almost to their last morsel of bread, that they proposed a capitulation. Even then they demanded honourable terms; and, as Cosmo, though no stranger to the extremity of their condition, was afraid that despair might prompt them to venture upon some wild enterprise, he immediately granted them conditions more favourable than they could have expected.

46. In reliance on your honour and good sense I will bear this burden as long as I can, and will do my utmost to perform my duty to my client, who stands to-day in an almost unprecedented extremity. Do you who are to try the case hear me with attention and indulgence. When I

have said all that I am about to say, then let a reply come from the other side; till I have done this, let my opponent keep silence; then it will be for you to decide which of us has the stronger case, whether riches, interest, power, audacity, or the clearest evidence of an innocent life are of most weight with you.

47. When Cyrus received these tidings, he turned to Croesus and said, "Where will all this end, Croesus, thinkest thou? It seemeth that these Lydians will not cease to cause trouble both to themselves and others. I doubt if it were not best to sell them all for slaves. For in truth what I have now done is as if a man were to kill the father and then spare the children. Thee, who wert something more than a father to thy people, I have seized and carried off, and to that people I have entrusted their city. Can I then feel surprise at their rebellion?" Thus did Cyrus open to Croesus his thoughts; whereat the latter, full of alarm lest Cyrus should lay Sardis in ruins, replied as follows:—"O King, thy words are reasonable, but do not, I beseech thee, give full vent to thine anger, nor destroy an ancient city, guiltless alike of the past and of the present trouble. I caused the former, and in my own person now pay the penalty."

48. Having been splendidly received by his fellow citizens, and having made all his arrangements for carrying out his wicked plan, the tyrant gave a great banquet, to which he invited his own kinsmen and all the most distinguished men of the city. When the repast was ended, he artfully turned the conversation to important matters by speaking of the greatness of the Pontiff and the Pontiff's son, and of their enterprises; and when the others began to reply to what he said, he suddenly rose up and warned them that such matters ought to be discussed in some more secret place. When they had followed him out of the public hall, and had seated themselves in another room, soldiers who lay hidden there rose up and put them all to death. After this, the tyrant mounted his horse, rode through the city, and besieged the chief magistrate in the

palace, so that all were constrained by fear to yield to him.

49. After compelling the Greeks of Asia to pay tribute, Croesus made great preparations to build ships with which to conquer the Greek islands. While he was thus engaged, Bias, one of the famous seven sages of Greece, came to his court. After the king had eagerly inquired "What news from Greece?" the wily Greek replied, with the greatest gravity, that the islanders were collecting a large cavalry force for the invasion of Lydia. Croesus thought his Lydians the finest horsemen in the world, and therefore cried out for joy, thanking the gods who had put such madness into his enemies' minds. Bias then explained that the islanders were just as glad to hear that Croesus would attack them by sea, where their hope was to chastise the Lydians for all the sufferings of the Asiatic Greeks. Convinced by this argument, the king sent envoys to conclude a peace with the islands.

50. But now in this valley was Christian hard put to it; for he had gone but a little way before he espied a fierce enemy coming over the field to meet him. Then did Christian begin to be afraid, and to cast in his mind whether to go back or to stand his ground. But he considered again that he had no armour for his back, and therefore thought that to turn the back to him might give him greater advantage with ease to pierce him with his darts: therefore he resolved to venture and stand his ground; for, thought he, had I no more in my eye than the saving of my life, it would be the best way to stand.

51. After the mutual and repeated discharge of missile weapons, in which the archers of Scythia might signalise their superior dexterity, the cavalry and infantry of the two armies were furiously mingled in closer combat. The Huns, who fought under the eye of their king, pierced through the doubtful and feeble centre of the allies, separated their wings from each other, and wheeling with

rapid effort to the left directed their whole force against the Visigoths. As Theodoric rode along the ranks to animate his troops, he received a mortal wound from the javelin of Andages, a noble Ostrogoth, and immediately fell from his horse. The wounded king was oppressed in the general disorder and trampled under the feet of his own cavalry, and his important death served to explain the ambiguous answer of the haruspices.

52. When Brutus was dead, Publius ruled over the people himself; and he began to build a great and strong house on the top of the hill Velia, which looks down upon the forum. This made the people say, "Publius wants to become a king, and is building a house in a strong place, as if for a citadel where he may live with his guards and oppress us." But he called the people together, and when he went down to them, the lictors who walked before him lowered the rods and axes which they bore, to show that he owned the people to be greater than himself. He complained that they had mistrusted him, and he said that he would not build his house on the top of the hill Velia, but at the bottom of it, and his house should be no stronghold. And he called on them to make a law that whoever should try to make himself king should be accursed, and whosoever would might slay him. When the law was passed, all men said, "Publius is a lover of the people, and seeks their good": and he was called Poplicola, which means "the people's friend," from that day forward.

53. It was now pretty clear that our troops were drawing near and that the term of our many sufferings was at hand. About noon, word was brought to the beleaguered troops that there was agitation in the whole of the enemies' quarters; that at daybreak there had been a rush to arms, that an important debate was going on; that some were in favour of awaiting Sertorius' arrival, others of setting out to meet him. Smoke too had been seen, it was said, at some distance, which was, men hoped, a signal of the march of the army. It seemed that Fortune was at last changing, and taking sides with us.

54. The thirty-two years of the absence of Lysias had been momentous ones for the fortunes of Athens. He had left the city in the height of her power. Signs of discontent at her supremacy had not indeed been wanting. Boeotia had thrown off the yoke, the Spartans had invaded the Attic soil, and Samos had revolted. But the former danger had been averted by the diplomacy of Pericles, and the rebellious Samians had been reduced by his promptitude. Athens was still the leading state in Hellas. But in the interval of his absence the Peloponnesian War had dragged its slow length along; and though there had been reverses on both sides, it was now growing evident that Athens must fail.

55. It fortuned there grew sedition in the city, because the Senate did favour the rich against the people. The poor common people, seeing no redress, gathered themselves one day together, and one encouraging another they all forsook the city, and encamped themselves upon a hill, called at that day the holy hill, along the river of Tiber, offering no creature any hurt or violence, or making any show of actual rebellion: saving that they cried, as they went up and down, that the rich men had driven them out of the city, and that all Italy through they might find air, water, and ground to bury themselves in. Moreover, they said, to dwell at Rome was nothing else but to be slain, or hurt with continual wars, and fighting for defence of the rich men's goods.

56. Then these two men went and showed themselves to the king, and told him how it had come to pass that they were thus treated. Darius feared that it was by common consent that the deed had been done; he therefore sent for them all in turn, because he wished to ascertain whether they approved what Intaphernes had done. When he had heard their answers, he laid hands on Intaphernes, his children and all his kindred; suspecting that he and his friends were about to revolt. When all had been seized and put in chains, the wife of Intaphernes came and stood at the palace gates, weeping and wailing greatly. So Darius after a while pitied her, and bade a messenger

go to her and say, "Lady, King Darius grants thee the life of one of thy kinsmen; choose which thou wilt of the prisoners." Then she pondered a while before she answered, "If the king grants me the life of one alone, I choose my brother."

57. When they were alone, he asked Lucian quietly why a person whose acquaintance he had valued was determined to be his enemy. Calmness is always agreeable. Lucian never doubted for a moment Alexander's real character, but the prophet interested him in spite of himself. That he might study him at leisure, he accepted his overtures, and even entered into some kind of intimacy with him. He stayed for some days at Abonotichus. The worshippers were astonished to find a blasphemer admitted to confidential intercourse with their chief; and Alexander undoubtedly succeeded, if not in disarming his guest's suspicions, yet in softening the vehemence of his dislike. He was so clever, so well informed, apparently so frank and open, that, as Lucian said, he would have taken in Epicurus himself.

58. When news of the death of the king of Scotland was brought to England, the English king sighed, saying: "Woe is me, for there will never reign in Scotland a king so near to me by birth, or whom I shall favour so much, or whose goodwill I shall so eagerly desire: for our friendship would have proved a blessing both to ourselves and to our subjects, had he not followed evil counsel." When the messenger added that the Scottish Queen had given birth to a daughter, and that the king had left no other heir, he at once began to conjecture that which afterwards came to pass; that the lords of Scotland, because the Queen was a Frenchwoman, would be persuaded to put this young Queen into the hands of the French for her education, rather than in his own, though he was nearer of blood to her than the French king was.

59. The king of the Molossians was fortunately absent from home when the stranger arrived at his gate, and the

queen Phthia received him with kindness, and instructed him in the most effectual method of disarming her husband's resentment and securing his protection. When Admetus returned, he found Themistocles seated at his hearth, holding the young prince, whom Phthia had placed in his hands. This among the Molossians was the most solemn form of supplication, more powerful than the olive branch among the Greeks. With this advantage, Themistocles appealed to the generosity of Admetus, disclosed the urgency of the danger that threatened his life, and argued that it was mean to exact an extreme revenge for a slight wrong from a fallen adversary. The king was touched; he raised the suppliant with an assurance of protection, which he fulfilled, when the Athenian and Lacedemonian envoys dogged their prey to his house, by refusing to surrender his guest.

60. War is horrible. It is frightful to reflect upon the human misery involved, and the sorrow and privation caused to multitudes. But, when we have allowed for all that feeling, we still recognise that there are other considerations to be brought into view, and that it is not only the sorrowful part of the picture on which we have to gaze. We can recognise that, deep as our sacrifices have been, much as we have had to give up, yet still the power, the prestige, the influence of the Empire is greater than it was when this war broke out. We have suffered greatly, but we have also greatly won.

61. Then, when his prey seemed about to slip from his grasp, some of the natives informed him of a route, shorter indeed but waste and waterless. Picking out the strongest and freshest both of horses and men, he set out again, in the afternoon, and accomplishing nearly fifty miles in the course of the night, came suddenly about dawn upon the weary and bewildered fugitives, the majority of whom fled at once on seeing Alexander. Bessus and his friends tried vainly for a while to induce Darius to mount a horse and flee with them; and as he again and again refused, they cast their javelins at their unhappy

victim and rode off, leaving him in his chariot mortally wounded. Here he was presently found and recognised by a Macedonian soldier, and breathed his last before his indefatigable enemy could come up.

62. With every power that we have we can do two things: we can work and we can play. Every power that we have is at the same time useful to us and delightful to us. Even when we are applying these powers to the furtherance of our personal objects, the activity of them gives us pleasure; and when we have no useful end to which to apply them, it is still pleasant to us to use them; the activity of them gives us pleasure for its own sake. There is no motion of our body or mind which we use in work, which we do not also use in play or amusement. If we walk in order to arrive at the place where our interest requires us to be, we also walk about the fields for enjoyment.

63. Those who would gladly pass their days together may be separated by the different course of their affairs; and friendship, like love, is destroyed by long absence, though it may be increased by short intermissions. What we have missed long enough to want it, we value more when it is regained; but that which has been lost till it is forgotten will be found at last with little gladness, and with still less if a substitute has supplied the place. No expectation is more frequently disappointed than that which naturally arises in the mind from the prospect of meeting an old friend after long separation. We expect the attraction to be revived and the coalition to be renewed: no man considers how much alteration time has made in himself, and very few inquire what effect it has had upon others. The first hour convinces them that the pleasure which they have formerly enjoyed is for ever at an end; different scenes have made different impressions; the opinions of both have changed; and that similitude of manners and sentiment is lost which confirmed them both in the approbation of themselves.

64. Meanwhile the second expedition had crossed the seas. It reached Darien about four months after the first settlers had fled. The new comers had fully expected to find a flourishing town, secure fortifications, and cultivated fields. They found a wilderness. The castle was in ruins, the houses had been burnt; the site of the proud city was overgrown with brushwood and inhabited only by wild beasts. The hearts of the adventurers sank within them, for this fleet had been fitted out, not to found a colony, but to recruit a colony already founded and supposed to be flourishing. They were therefore worse provided with every necessary of life than their predecessors had been. Some attempts, however, were made to restore what had perished. A new fort was constructed on the old ground, and within the ramparts was built a village consisting of eighty or ninety houses. But the work went on languidly.

65. A dreadful slaughter of the Romans ensued, fifteen thousand men being killed on the spot, and eighteen hundred taken prisoners. Nor were the conquerors in a much better state than the vanquished, Pyrrhus himself being wounded and thirteen thousand of his forces slain. Night coming on put an end to the slaughter on both sides, and Pyrrhus was heard to exclaim that one more such victory would ruin his whole army. The next day, as he walked to view the field of battle, he could not help regarding with admiration the bodies of the Romans who were slain. Upon seeing them all with their wounds in front he was heard to cry out, "With what ease could I conquer the world, had I the Romans for soldiers, or had they me for their king!"

66. The early kings of the Egyptians had given the soldiers great estates; but when the priest Setho became king, he took away these lands to bestow them on the temples. Presently, when the Arabs prepared to invade Egypt, the soldiers refused to take up arms for the defence of their country. The king, they said, had declared that they were of no use: let him now find out whether he had spoken truth or falsehood. Setho entered a temple to

lament his evil fortune, and fell asleep at the very feet of the statue. In his sleep, he thought that a calm voice bade him have no fear of the enemy, for the gods would help the king who had honoured them. Trusting to this promise, Setho collected an army of farm-labourers and marched against the invaders.

67. And now a quarrel, which had taken its rise a few days before between those who had been ordered ashore for the attack and those who had continued on board, grew to such a height, that the Commander thought it necessary to interpose his authority to appease it. The ground of this dissension was the plunder taken in the town, which those who had acted on shore had seized for themselves and considered as a reward of the risks they had run. Those who had remained on board considered this very unjust, urging that had it been left to their choice they would have preferred to fight on shore; and that their duty, while their comrades were absent, was extremely fatiguing, for besides the labour of the day they were under arms all night.

68. After the death of Theramenes, the Thirty began to use such outrage as excelled their former villainies. For having three thousand, as they thought, firm unto them, they robbed all others without fear or shame, despoiling them of lands and goods, and caused them to fly into banishment. This flight of the citizens procured their liberty, and the general good of the city. For the banished citizens, who were fled to Thebes, entered into consultation, and resolved to hazard their lives in setting free the city of Athens. Seventy men or thereabouts were the first undertakers, who with their captain Thrasybulus took Phyla, a place of strength in the territory of Athens.

69. In his speech before the people he was moderately prudent; he glanced at the treachery of his friends, but he did not make too much of it. He praised his own good qualities, but not extravagantly. He described Pompeius

as "the wisest, best, and greatest of all men that had been, were, or ever would be." Himself he compared to Marius returning also from undeserved exile, and he delicately spoke in honour of a name most dear to the Roman plebs. But he, he said, unlike Marius, had no enemies but the enemies of his country. He had no retaliation to demand for his own wrongs. His first and his last object would be to show his gratitude to his fellow-citizens.

70. Friends and fellow-citizens, behold the situation to which we are reduced. We must either yield up our tender infants to be destroyed, our wives and children to the insults of the soldiery, or we must comply with the conditions of our cruel conqueror. He will grant us life upon no other condition than that of our being unworthy of it. Look around you, my friends, and fix your eyes on the persons whom you wish to deliver up as victims of your own safety. Which of these would you destine to the rack, the axe, or the halter? Is there any here that has not watched for you, fought for you, and bled for you? Would you devote your defenders to destruction—those who have freely exposed their lives for the preservation of you and yours? Justice, honour, humanity makes such a treason impossible.

71. Quintcius at once marched to the town of Larisa, for he had no definite information as to the direction in which Philip had fled. Soon however a herald arrived from the king. He pretended that he had come merely to ask a truce to bury the dead; in reality his errand was to ask permission to send envoys to the Roman general. Both requests were granted. But the Aetolians, who up to this time had been the faithful allies of the Romans, were much annoyed that Quintcius sent also a kindly message to the king, telling him to be of good cheer. They complained that the general had been entirely changed by success; heretofore he had told them everything, now he neglected them and was trying to ingratiate himself with Philip.

72. The people of Cremona, amidst the horrors that covered the face of the country, had strewed the way with roses and laurels, and even raised altars, where victims were slain, as if a nation of slaves had been employed to adorn the triumph of a despotic prince. Meanwhile Valens and Caecina with a large number of their officers visited the field. They pointed to the particular spots where the fighting had been fiercest: "Here the legions rushed to the attack; there the cavalry bore down all before them; from that quarter the auxiliaries wheeled about and surrounded the enemy." The centurions talked of their own exploits, while the common soldiers quitted the road to mark the places where they had fought, and to survey the arms and dead bodies of the vanquished piled up in heaps. Some wondered at the destruction they had wrought; others recognised the common lot of humanity and shed tears of sorrow and pity.

73. Archidamus first ravaged the plains of Attica. The proximity of the invaders caused great excitement in Athens, and roused furious opposition to Pericles, who would not allow the troops to go forth against them, except a few horsemen in the neighbourhood of the city. He had been afraid that Archidamus, who was his personal friend, might spare his property, either from friendship or policy; so he declared to the citizens that he would give his lands to the people, if they left them unravaged. The invader presently advanced to Boeotia. The Athenians meanwhile had been operating by sea. They had sent one hundred ships round the Peloponnes. An attack on Methone failed; the place was saved by a daring Spartan officer, Brasidas, who by this exploit began a distinguished career.

74. Caesar had seen the white cliffs of Britain the year before, in his expedition against the Morini. He had been hearing of the island ever since he came to Gaul, and knew it to be a refuge for his enemies and a secret source of their strength. He had now a fleet which could navigate the ocean; and as he failed to obtain any satisfactory information about the nature and inhabitants of the

country from the sailors and merchants who alone were acquainted with it, he determined to go and find out about the country for himself. Every precaution was taken, for the enterprise was perhaps the most hazardous ever yet undertaken by a Roman general. Volusenus, an officer whose command of the Gallic cavalry made him a fit person to land on a strange Celtic shore, had been sent with a ship of war to discover a suitable harbour, and to make inquiries as to the strength and warlike capacity of the natives.

75. Presently a power greater than that of Carthage interposed. The Romans could drive their ships against those of the enemy and win by sheer force; but they could not conquer wind and wave, nor had they the knowledge and experience of the Carthaginian pilots to serve them on a dangerous coast and in a dangerous season. They were duly warned, but the warning fell on deaf ears. The Roman consuls, elated by their success on the African shore, determined to coast along Southern Sicily and crown their achievements by taking certain towns which were still held by Carthage. They were caught in a terrible storm, in which 284 out of the 364 vessels were lost. The coast was strewn for miles with corpses and wreckage, and the great Roman fleet, which had survived two hard-fought battles, was practically annihilated in a day.

PRINTED AT THE BURLINGTON PRESS, CAMBRIDGE.

Titles underlined are those of New Books and New Editions published during the year ending March 1911.

Select List of Books IN THE University Tutorial Series.

University Tutorial Press Ltd.

W. B. CLIVE, 157 DRURY LANE, LONDON, W.C.

CONTENTS.

	PAGES		PAGES
Education, etc.	2, 3	English Text-Books	10
Mathematics and Mechanics	3-5	Philosophy	11
Biology	5	Modern History	11
Physics	6	Geography	12
Chemistry, etc.	7	Roman and Greek History	12
French	8	Latin and Greek Text-Books	13
English Classics	9	Latin and Greek Classics	14, 15

The General Catalogue (64 pages); Sectional Catalogues in (1) Mathematics and Mechanics, (2) Science, (3) English, History and Geography, (4) Education and Philosophy, (5) Classics, (6) French: and Special Catalogues for London University and other Examinations, may be had post free on application.

MARCH 1911.

Mathematics and Mechanics—continued.

Arithmetic, The Primary. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A.; B.Sc., F.R.A.S. An Introductory Course of Arithmetical Exercises. In Three Parts. Parts I. and II., each 6d. Part III., 9d. With Answers, each Part 1d. extra.

"Thoroughly suited for use in elementary schools generally."—*School Guardian*.

Astronomy, Elementary Mathematical. By C. W. C. BARLOW, M.A., B.Sc., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 6s. 6d.

Coordinate Geometry. By J. H. GRACE, M.A., F.R.S., and F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. 4s. 6d.

An elementary treatment of the straight line, circle, and conic.

Dynamics, The Tutorial. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Geometry, Theoretical and Practical. By W. P. WORKMAN, M.A., B.Sc., and A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc., F.C.P. .

PART I. Covering Euclid, I., III. (1-34), IV. (1-9). 2s. 6d.

PART II. Covering Euclid. II., III. (35-37), IV. (10-16), VI. 2s.

PART III. Covering Euclid XI. 1s. 6d.

"The three parts now issued form an excellent work"—*School World*.

This work is also published in two volumes under the titles :—

Matriculation Geometry (Equivalent to Euclid I.-IV.). 3s. 6d.

Intermediate Geometry (Equivalent to Euclid VI., XI.). 2s. 6d.

The School Geometry. Being an edition of *Geometry, Theoretical and Practical*, Parts I. and II., specially adapted for ordinary school use. In one vol., 3s. 6d. In two Parts, each 2s.

Introduction to the School Geometry. 1s.

"The reputations of this series, the authors, and the press from which these books are issued, are a sufficient guarantee of their value. Excellent in every respect."—*Schoolmaster*.

Graphs : The Graphical Representation of Algebraic Functions. By G. H. FRENCH, M.A., and G. OSBORN, M.A., Mathematical Masters of the Leys School, Cambridge. *Second Edition.* 1s. 6d.

Graphs, Matriculation. (Contained in *The New Matriculation Algebra.*) By C. H. FRENCH, M.A., and G. OSBORN, M.A. 1s.

Hydrostatics, Intermediate. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. 3s. 6d.

Hydrostatics, The Matriculation. (Contained in *Intermediate Hydrostatics.*) By Dr. BRIGGS and Dr. BRYAN. 2s.

Mechanics, The Matriculation. By Dr. WM. BRIGGS and Dr. G. H. BRYAN. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Mathematics and Mechanics—continued.

The Right Line and Circle (Coordinate Geometry). By Dr. BRIGGS and Dr. BRYAN. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Statics, The Tutorial. By Dr. WM. BRIGGS and Dr. G. H. BRYAN. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Tables, Clive's Mathematical. Edited by A. G. CRACKNELL, M.A., B.Sc. 1s. 6d.

Trigonometry, The Tutorial. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Biology.

Botany for Matriculation.* By Professor F. CAVERS, D.Sc. 5s. 6d. Also in Two Parts. Part I. 3s. 6d. Part II. 2s. 6d.

This book is especially written to cover the requirements of the London University Matriculation Syllabus in Botany.

"It would not be easy to get a more comprehensive account of the most important facts relating to plant life and the structural details of the commoner flowering plants than this excellent manual contains."—*Education*.

Plant Biology.* An elementary Course of Botany on modern lines. By F. Cavers, D.Sc., F.L.S. 3s. 6d.

"The freshness of treatment, the provision of exact instruction for practical work really worth doing, and the consistent recognition that a plant is a living thing, should secure for Professor Cavers' book an instant welcome."—*School World*.

Plants, Life Histories of Common.* An Introductory Course of Botany based on the study of types by both outdoor and indoor experiment. By F. CAVERS, D.Sc., F.L.S. 3s.

"The author is to be congratulated on the excellent features of his book, which may be summarised as a clear diction, a logical sequence, and a recognition of the essentials."—*Nature*

Botany, A Text-Book of. By J. M. LOWSON, B.Sc., F.L.S. *Fifth Edition.* 6s. 6d.

"It represents the nearest approach to the ideal botanical text-book that has yet been produced."—*Pharmaceutical Journal*.

Zoology, A Text-Book of. By H. G. WELLS, B.Sc., and A. M. DAVIES, D.Sc. *Fifth Edition.* 6s. 6d.

"It is one of the most reliable and useful text-books published."—*Naturalist's Quarterly Review*.

* A set of 41 microscopic slides specially designed by Professor CAVERS for use with his books is supplied at £1 5s. net

Physics.

The Tutorial Physics. By R. WALLACE STEWART, D.Sc.; E. CATCHPOOL, B.Sc., C. J. L. WAGSTAFF, M.A., W. R. BOWER, A.R.C.Sc., and J. SATTERLY, D.Sc., B.A. In 6 Vols.

I. Sound, Text-Book of. By E. CATCHPOOL, B.Sc. *Fifth Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 4s. 6d.

"A full, philosophical, and decidedly original treatment of this branch of physics."—*Educational Times.*

II. Heat, Higher Text-Book of. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 6s. 6d. "Clear, concise, well arranged, and well illustrated."—*Journal of Education.*

III. Light, Text-Book of. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. *Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 4s. 6d.

"A very full and able treatment of the elements of Geometrical Optics."—*Educational News.*

IV. Magnetism and Electricity, Higher Text-Book of. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. *Second Edition.* 6s. 6d.

"The text is exceedingly lucid and painstaking in the endeavour to give the student a sound knowledge of physics."—*Nature.*

V. Properties of Matter. By C. J. L. WAGSTAFF, M.A. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Very interesting sections are those on moments of inertia from an elementary point of view, Boys' modification of Cavendish's experiment, surface tension, and capillarity."—*School.*

VI. Practical Physics. By W. R. BOWER, A.R.C.S., and J. SATTERLY, D.Sc., B.A. 4s. 6d.

"Great pains have evidently been taken to secure efficiency, and the result is a text-book which merits great praise."—*Nature.*

The New Matriculation Heat: The New Matriculation Light: The New Matriculation Sound. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. 2s. 6d. each volume.

"The treatment is lucid and concise, and thoroughly in accordance with the most recent methods of teaching elementary physics. An outstanding feature of these books is the inclusion of a number of experiments which may be performed with the most simple and inexpensive apparatus, and from which satisfactory results may be obtained."—*Nature.*

Electricity, Technical. By Professor H. T. DAVIDGE, B.Sc., M.I.E.E., and R. W. HUTCHINSON, B.Sc. *2nd Ed.* 4s. 6d.

"A most desirable combination of sound instruction in scientific principles and engineering practice."—*Educational News.*

Magnetism and Electricity, Matriculation. By R. H. JUDE, M.A., D.Sc., and JOHN SATTERLY, D.Sc., B.A. Specially written for the current London University syllabus in this subject. 4s. 6d.

"This volume gives evidence at every stage of the ripe scholarship of its authors as well as of their high teaching ability."—*Educational News.*

Chemistry, etc.

The Tutorial Chemistry. By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc., Ph.D. Edited by WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.C.S.

Part I. Non-Metals. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Part II. Metals and Physical Chemistry. *Sec. Ed.* 4s. 6d.

"The leading truths and laws of chemistry are here expounded in a most masterly manner."—*Chemical News.*

Chemistry for Matriculation.* By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc., Ph.D., and H. W. BAUSOR, M.A. 5s. 6d.

This book contains a course of elementary Chemistry, theoretical and practical, covering the new London University Matriculation syllabus. It is specially suited to modern methods of teaching.

Chemical Analysis, Qualitative and Quantitative. By WM. BRIGGS, LL.D., M.A., B.Sc., F.C.S., and R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

The Junior Chemistry. By R. H. ADIE, M.A., B.Sc., Lecturer in Chemistry, St. John's College, Cambridge. 2s. 6d. *Second Edition.*

A course of combined theoretical and practical work covering the requirements of the Oxford and Cambridge Junior Locals.

"A useful and practical course, constructed on thoroughly scientific principles."—*Oxford Magazine.*

The Elements of Organic Chemistry. By E. I. LEWIS, B.A., B.Sc., Science Master at Oundle School. 2s. 6d.

The fundamental principles of the Chemistry of Carbon Compounds developed from and illustrated by the behaviour of the Ethyl, Methyl, Phenyl, and Benzyl compounds mainly.

"A useful book containing many well selected typical experiments. The directions are clearly and carefully given."—*Secondary Education.*

Systematic Practical Organic Chemistry. By G. M. NORMAN, B.Sc., F.C.S. *Second Edition.* 1s. 6d.

Perspective Drawing, The Theory and Practice of. By S. POLAK, Art Master. 5s

A complete course of instruction covering the requirements of the Board of Education Syllabus in Perspective Drawing.

Science German Course. By C. W. PAGET MOFFATT, M.A., M.B., B.C. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Provides a convenient means of obtaining sufficient acquaintance with the German language to read simple scientific descriptions in it with intelligence."—*Nature.*

* Sets of apparatus and reagents are supplied specially designed for use with this book—Set A, 18s. 6d.; Set B, £2.

French.

Junior French Course. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A., Professor of French at University College, Nottingham, and Examiner in the University of London. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

“Distinctly an advance on similar courses.”—*Journal of Education.*

The Matriculation French Course. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

“The rules are well expressed, the exercises appropriate, and the matter accurate and well arranged.”—*Guardian.*

French Accidence, The Tutorial. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. With Exercises. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

“We can heartily recommend it.”—*Schoolmaster.*

French Syntax, The Tutorial. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. *Second Edition.* With Exercises. 3s. 6d.

“It is a decidedly good book.”—*Guardian.*

French Grammar, The Tutorial. Containing the *Accidence* and the *Syntax* in One Volume. *Second Edition.* 4s. 6d. Also the *Exercises on the Accidence*, 1s. 6d. ; on the *Syntax*, 1s.

Groundwork of French Composition. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. 2s.

French Prose Composition. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. With Notes and Vocabulary. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

“The arrangement is lucid, the rules clearly expressed, the suggestions really helpful, and the examples carefully chosen.”—*Educational Times.*

Junior French Reader. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. With Notes and Vocabulary. *Second Edition.* 1s. 6d.

“A very useful first reader with good vocabulary and sensible notes.”—*Schoolmaster.*

French Prose Reader. By S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. With Notes and Vocabulary. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

“Admirably chosen extracts.”—*School Government Chronicle.*

Matriculation French Reader. Containing Prose, Verse, Notes, and Vocabulary. By J. A. PERRET, late Examiner in French in the University of London. 2s. 6d.

“We can recommend this book without reserve.”—*School World.*

Advanced French Reader. By S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

“Chosen from a large range of good modern authors.”—*Schoolmaster.*

Higher French Reader. By E. WEEKLEY, M.A. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

“The passages are well chosen.”—*Journal of Education.*

English Classics.

Burke.—Revolution in France. By H. P. ADAMS, M.A. 2s. 6d.
 Chaucer.—Canterbury Tales. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. With Glossary. Prologue. 1s. Knight's Tale, Nun's Priest's Tale, Man of Law's Tale, Squire's Tale. Each with Prologue, 2s 6d.
Pardoner's Tale. By G. M. DRENNAN, M.A., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Gray.—Poems. By A. J. F. COLLINS, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Johnson.—Life of Milton. By S. E. GOGGIN, M.A. 1s. 6d.

Johnson.—Rasselas. By A. J. F. COLLINS, M.A. 2s.

Keats.—Odes. By A. R. WEEKES, M.A. 1s. 6d.

Langland.—Piers Plowman. Prologue and Passus I.-VII. By J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A. 4s. 6d.

Milton.—Early Poems, Comus, Lycidas. By S. E. GOGGIN, M.A., and A. F. WATT, M.A. 2s. 6d. Areopagitica. 1s. 6d.
Comus. 1s. Lycidas. 1s.

Milton.—Paradise Lost, Books I., II. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 1s. 6d.
 Books IV., V. By S. E. GOGGIN, M.A. 1s. 6d. Books V.
VI. By A. J. F. COLLINS, M.A., and S. E. GOGGIN, M.A. 1s. 6d.

Milton.—Paradise Regained. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Milton.—Samson Agonistes. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.

More.—Utopia. By R. R. RUSK, Ph.D. 2s.

Pope.—Rape of the Lock. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 1s. 6d.

Shakespeare:—

As You Like It. By A. R. WEEKES, M.A. 2s.

Coriolanus. By A. J. F. COLLINS, M.A. 2s.

Hamlet, King Lear. By S. E. GOGGIN, M.A. 2s. each.

Julius Caesar. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 2s.

Merchant of Venice. By S. E. GOGGIN, M.A. 2s.

Midsummer Night's Dream. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 2s.

Richard II. By A. F. WATT, M.A. 2s.

The Tempest. By A. R. WEEKES, M.A. 2s.

Shakespeare. By Prof. W. J. ROLFE, D.Litt. In 40 volumes.

The Plays (including Two Noble Kinsmen) at 2s. 6d. each, except King John, Midsummer Night's Dream, and Much Ado about Nothing, which are published at 2s. each. Also Sonnets, 2s. 6d.; Venus and Adonis, 2s. 6d.

Shelley.—Adonais. By A. R. WEEKES, M.A. 1s. 6d.

Spenser.—Faerie Queene, Book I. By W. H. HILL, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Geography.

A Text-Book of Geography. By G. C. FRY, M.Sc., F.I.C. 4s. 6d.

This book is intended for use in the upper forms of schools and by candidates for London University Matriculation, the Oxford and Cambridge Locals, and other Examinations of similar standard.

It deals with both General and Regional Geography. In Regional Geography the natural features are first dealt with and then the political facts that are the outcome of these features.

"The compilation is by no means one of mere geographical facts; the 'why' and the 'wherefore' are everywhere in evidence—the subject is, indeed, presented scientifically."—*Schoolmaster*.

"It is one of the most scientific and rational text-books yet published."—*Educational News*.

Roman and Greek History.

The Tutorial History of Rome. (To 37 A.D.) By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. With Maps. *Fourth Edition, Revised and in part Rewritten*. Or in Two Vols., 2s. each: Vol. I., to 133 B.C.; Vol. II., 133 B.C.—37 A.D.

"It is well and clearly written."—*Saturday Review*

"A distinctly good book, full, clear, and accurate" —*Guardian*.

The Tutorial History of Greece. (To 323 B.C.) By Prof. W. J. WOODHOUSE, M.A. 4s. 6d.

"Prof. Woodhouse is exceptionally well qualified to write a history of Greece, and he has done it well."—*School World*.

A Longer History of Rome. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., and others (each volume containing an account of the Literature of the Period)—

390—202 B.C. 3s. 6d.

202—133 B.C. 3s. 6d.

133—78 B.C. 3s. 6d.

78—31 B.C. 3s. 6d.

44 B.C.—138 A.D. 3s. 6d.

"Written in a clear and direct style. Its authors show a thorough acquaintance with their authorities, and have also used the works of modern historians to good effect."—*Journal of Education*.

A Longer History of Greece. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. (each volume containing an account of the Literature of the Period)—

To 495 B.C. 3s. 6d.

495—431 B.C. 3s. 6d.

440—404 B.C. 3s. 6d.

404—362 B.C. 3s. 6d.

362—323 B.C. 3s. 6d.

Sicily, 491—289 B.C. 3s. 6d.

"The authors have apparently spared no pains to make their work at once comprehensive and readable."—*Schoolmaster*.

Latin and Greek.

GRAMMARS AND READERS.

Junior Latin Course. By B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s. 6d.

"A good practical guide. The principles are sound, and the rules are clearly stated."—*Educational Times*.

The Tutorial Latin Grammar. By B. J. HAYES, M.A., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Accurate and full without being overloaded with detail."—*Schoolmaster*.

Latin Composition. With copious Exercises and easy continuous Passages. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. *Sixth Edition, Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.

"Simplicity of statement and arrangement, apt examples illustrating each rule, exceptions to these adroitly stated just at the proper place and time, are among some of the striking characteristics of this excellent book."—*Schoolmaster*.

Junior Latin Reader. By E. J. G. FORSE, M.A. 1s. 6d.

Matriculation Selections from Latin Authors. With Introduction (History and Antiquities), Notes, and Vocabulary. By A. F. WATT, M.A., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Provides practice in reading Latin in preparation for Examinations for which no classics are prescribed.

"It is quite an interesting selection, and well done."—*School World*.

"The selection is a good one, and the notes are brief and to the purpose."—*Journal of Education*.

Matriculation Latin Construing Book. By A. F. WATT, M.A., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. 2s.

A guide to the construing of the Latin period and its translation into English.

"One of the most useful text-books of this very practical Tutorial Series."—*School Guardian*.

The Tutorial Latin Reader. With VOCABULARY. 2s. 6d.

"A soundly practical work."—*Guardian*.

Advanced Latin Unseens. Edited by H. J. MAIDMENT, M.A., and T. R. MILLS, M.A. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

"Contains some good passages, which have been selected from a wider field than that previously explored by similar manuals."—*Cambridge Review*.

The Tutorial Latin Dictionary. By F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A., late Fellow of Queens' College, Cambridge. 6s. 6d.

"A sound school dictionary."—*Speaker*.

Advanced Greek Unseens. *Second Edition, Enlarged.* 3s. 6d.

The Tutorial Greek Reader. With VOCABULARIES. By A. WAUGH YOUNG, M.A. *Third Edition, Enlarged.* 2s. 6d.

Editions of Latin and Greek Classics.

The Text is in all cases accompanied by Introduction and Notes; books marked (*) contain also an alphabetical Lexicon.

The Vocabularies are in order of the text and are preceded by Test Papers.

	Text.	Voc.		Text.	Voc.
Acts of Apostles.	...	1/0	CURTIUS—		
			Book 9, Ch. 6-end.	1/6	...
AESCHYLUS—			DEMOSTHENES—		
Eumenides.	3/6	1/0	Androton.	4/6	...
Persae.	3/6	...			
Prometheus Vinctus.	2/6	1/0			
Septem contra Thebas.	3/6	1/0	EURIPIDES—		
ARISTOPHANES—			Alcestis.	1/6	1/0
Ranae.	3/6	...	Andromache	3/6	...
CAESAR—			Bacchae.	3/6	1/0
Civil War, Book 1.	1/6	...	Heuba.	3/6	...
Civil War, Book 3.	2/6	1/0	Hippolytus.	3/6	1/0
Gallie War, Books 1-7. (each)	1/6	1/0	Iphigenia in Tauris	3/6	1/0
Gallie War, Book 1, Ch. 1 to 29.	1/0	...	Medea.	2/0	...
The Invasion of Britain.	1/6	1/0	HERODOTUS—		
Gallie War, Book 7, Ch. 1 to 68.	1/0	...	Book 3.	4/6	1/0
CICERO—			Book 4, Ch. 1-14.	4/6	1/0
Ad Atticum, Book 4.	3/6	...	Book 6.	2/6	1/0
De Amicitia.	*1/6	1/0	Book 8.	3/6	...
De Finibus, Book 1.	2/6	...	HOMER—		
De Finibus, Book 2.	3/6	...	Iliad, Book 6.	...	1/0
De Officiis, Book 3.	3/6	1/0	Iliad, Book 24.	3/6	..
De Senectute.	*1/6	1/0	Odyssey, Books 9, 10.	2/6	...
In Catilinam I.-IV.	2/6	...	Odyssey, Books 11, 12.	2/6	...
	I., II.	1/6	Odyssey, Books 13, 14.	2/6	...
”	I., III. (each)	1/6	Odyssey, Book 17.	1/6	1/0
”	I. and IV.	1/6	HORACE—		
Philippic II.	2/6	1/0	Epistles (including <i>Ars Poetica</i>).	4/6	...
Pro Archia.	1/6	1/0	Epistles (excluding <i>A.P.</i>)	...	1/0
Pro Balbo.	...	1/0	Epodes.	1/6	...
Pro Cuentio.	3/6	1/0	Odes, Books 1-4.	*3/6	...
Pro Lege Manilia.	2/6	1/0	Separately, each Book	*1/6	1/0
Pro Marcello.	1/6	1/0	Satires.	3/6	1/0
Pro Milone.	3/6	1/0	ISOCRATES—		
Pro Plancio	3/6	1/0	De Bigis	2/6	...
Pro Roscio Amerine.	2/6	1/0			

Editions of Latin and Greek Classics—*continued.*

	Text.	Voc.		Text.	Voc.
JUVENAL—			SALLUST—		
Satires 1, 3, 10, 11.	3/6	...	Catilene.	1/6	1/0
Satires 1, 3, 4.	3/6	...			
Satires 8, 10, 13.	2/6	...	SOPHOCLES—		
Satires 11, 13, 14.	3/6	...	Ajax.	3/6	1/0
LIVY—			Antigone.	2/6	1/0
Books 1, 5. (each)	2/6	1/0	Electra.	3/6	1/0
Book 2. Ch. 1-50.	2/6	1/0	TACITUS—		
Books 3, 6, 9. (each)	3 6	1/0	Agricola.	2/6	1/0
Book 9. Ch. 1-19.	1/6	...	Annals, Book 1.	2/6	1/0
Book 21, Ch. 1-30.	1 6	...	Annals, Book 2.	2/6	...
Books 21, 22. (each)	2/6	1/6	Germania.	2/6	1/0
LUCIAN—			Histories, Books 1, 3. (each)	3/6	1/0
Charon and Piscator.	3/6	1/0	TERENCE—		
LYSIAS—			Adelphi.	3/6	...
Eratosthenes.	2/6	...	THUCYDIDES—		
Eratosth. and Agoratus.	...	1/0	Book 7.	3/6	...
NEPOS—			VERGIL—		
Hannibal, Cato, Atticus.	1/0	...	Aeneid, Books 1-8. (each)	*1/6	1/0
OVID—			Books 7-10.	3/6	...
Fasti, Books 3, 4.	2/6	1/0	Book 9.	*1/6	...
Fasti, Books 5, 6.	3/6	1/0	Books 9, 10.	...	1/0
Heroides, 1-10.	3 6	1/0	Book 10.	*1/6	...
Heroides, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 12.	...	1/6	Book 11.	*1/6	1/0
Heroides, 1, 5, 12, 1, 6; 12, 1, 0	...		Book 12.	*1 6	...
Metamorphoses, Book 1, lines 1-150; Book 3, lines 1-250, 511-733; Book 5, lines 385-550.			Elegues.	3/6	1/0
(each) 1/6			Georgics.	4/6	...
Book 11.	...	1/0	Georgics, Books 1 and 2.	3/6	1/0
Book 11, lines 410-748.	1/6	...	Georgics, Books 1 and 4.	1/6	1/0
Books 13, 14. (each)	1/6	1/0	Georgics, Book 4.	1 6	...
Tristia, Books 1, 3. (each)	1 6	1/0	XENOPHON—		
PLATO—			Anabasis, Book 1.	1/6	1/0
Phaedo, 3/6; Apology.	3/6	1/0	Anabasis, Book 4.	1/6	...
Crito.	2/6	1/0	Cyropaedia, Book 1	1/6	1/0
Crito and Euthyphro.	2/6	..	Cyropaedia, Book 5.	...	1/0
Euthyphro and Mene-			Hellenica, Books 3, 4. (each)	1/6	...
xenus.	4/6	1/0	Memorabilia, Book 1.	3/6	1/0
Ion, Laches. (each)	3 6	1/0	Oeconomicus.	4/6	1/0

A detailed catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.